

Business Environment

IMMM



© Copyright 2024 Publisher

ISBN: 978-93-91540-83-8

This book may not be duplicated in any way without the express written consent of the publisher, except in the form of brief excerpts or quotations for the purposes of review. The information contained herein is for the personal use of the reader and may not be incorporated in any commercial programs, other books, databases, or any kind of software without written consent of the publisher. Making copies of this book or any portion, for any purpose other than your own is a violation of copyright laws. The author and publisher have used their best efforts in preparing this book and believe that the content is reliable and correct to the best of their knowledge. The publisher makes no representation or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1:	Introduction to Business Environment	1
CHAPTER 2:	Environmental Scanning	13
CHAPTER 3:	Micro Business Environment	27
CHAPTER 4:	Macro Business Environment	41
CHAPTER 5:	Political Environment.....	59
CHAPTER 6:	Economic Environment.....	73
CHAPTER 7:	Technical and Legal Environment	91
CHAPTER 8:	Socio-Cultural Environment & Corporate Governance	111
CHAPTER 9:	Business Environment of Service Sector.....	131
CHAPTER 10:	Global Environment	147
CHAPTER 11:	Business Ethics	175
CHAPTER 12:	Sustainable Development and CSR.....	195

112222

Course Outcomes

The course on the “Business Environment” helps you gain insights into the dynamic interaction of internal and external factors shaping the business environment. Assess the effects of economic, political, social, and technological trends on business operations. Formulate strategies to adapt to changes, ensuring competitiveness and sustainability in the evolving business landscape. The book comprises the following twelve chapters:

Chapter 1: Introduction to Business Environment- This foundational chapter commences with the concept of business environment and its components followed by relation between business environment and strategic management.

Chapter 2: Environmental Scanning- The chapter introduces the meaning and importance of environmental scanning. Then it covers business environment analysis and SWOT analysis. At the end of the chapter, it explains assessing risk in business environment.

Chapter 3: Micro Business Environment- This chapter discusses the concept of micro business environment. Further, it explains the meaning of organisation appraisal.

Chapter 4: Macro Business Environment- This chapter explains the concept of macro business environment. It then delves into the factors affecting macro business environment.

Chapter 5: Political Environment- This chapter provides an overview of political environment of India and public sector—an environmental perspective. Further, it explores the concept of government intervention in private business and public sector reforms and performance.

Chapter 6: Economic Environment- The chapter lays the groundwork by elucidating the Indian economic environment and kinds of economic systems. It explores the economic policies and current inflationary position and its impact on business sector. At the end of the chapter, it explains the economic legislations and economic transition in India.

Chapter 7: Technical and Legal Environment- This chapter begins with the concept of technical environment and legal environment. It describes the Acts influencing legal environment of business in India. It also explains laws protecting consumers, society and public interest. Further, it covers the concept of intellectual property regimes and legislation for unfair trade practices.

Chapter 8: Socio-Cultural Environment and Corporate Governance- This chapter introduces the meaning of socio-cultural environment and the concept of corporate governance. It discusses the corporate social responsibility of business and its importance. Then it describes the uses of social audits.

Chapter 9: Business Environment of Service Sector- This chapter focuses on understanding the service sector and banking reforms and challenges. Then it delves into the current industrialisation trends and industrial policy environment for the SME sector. The chapter concludes with an explanation of the emerging service sectors of the Indian economy.

Chapter 10: Global Environment- This chapter commences with the concept of globalisation, its impact on the Indian industry, and the effects of globalisation. It explores mode of entries into the international market and types of international trade strategies. The chapter extends to environment for foreign trade and investment and exchange rate movements and their impact. At the end of the chapter, it describes globalisation trends, challenges, and the balance of payment trends.

Chapter 11: Business Ethics- This chapter begins with the concept of ethics. Then it explores business and ethics and management and ethics, then discusses a code of ethics for managers. At the end of the chapter, it explains the development of an ethical organisational culture and the 4-V model of ethical leadership.

Chapter 12: Sustainable Development and CSR- The final chapter explores the concept of sustainable development and concept of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR). It introduces using CSR to gain competitive advantage and stakeholders and shareholders. The chapter concludes by discussing the driving force for CSR in India, obstacles to the implementation of CSR, corporate social responsibility and corporate governance.

Introduction to Business Environment

Table of Contents

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Concept of Business Environment
 - 1.2.1 Nature and Scope of Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 1.3 Components of Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 1.4 Relation between Business Environment and Strategic Management
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 1.5 Summary
- 1.6 Key Words
- 1.7 Case Study
- 1.8 Exercise
- 1.9 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 1.10 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept of business environment
- Describe the nature and scope of business environment
- Explain the components of business environment
- Discuss the relationship between business environment and strategic management

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Business is an organisation or enterprise engaged in producing goods and services for profit motive. It is a collective effort where a firm is engaged in commercial, industrial, or professional activities. The main aim of business is to satisfy the needs of customers. The success of every business depends on adapting itself to the environment within which it functions. For example, with changes in the government policies, the business needs to adapt itself to the new policies. Similarly, any technological advancement may render the existing products obsolete, such as the introduction of smartphones, which have replaced the telephone to a greater extent. Therefore, it is very important to have a clear understanding of the basic concept of the business environment and the nature of its various components.

Business environment includes those external factors and institutions over which it does not have any direct control. These factors affect the functioning of an organisation, directly or indirectly. These include customers, competitors, suppliers, government, and the social, political, legal, and technological factors, etc.

The set of external factors, such as economic factors, social factors, political and legal factors, demographic factors, technical factors, etc., which are uncontrollable in nature and affect the business decisions of a firm is called the business environment.

The relationship between business and its environment can be explained by following points:

- Business is affected by its environment, and, in turn, to some extent, it will also influence the external factors. Similarly, the economic environment influences socio-cultural environment, and vice versa. Other environmental factors also have same relationship with each other.
- The environmental factors are constantly changing. Similarly, business is also dynamic.
- One business firm, by itself, may not be able to change its environment. But together with other businesses, it will be in a position to mould the environment in its favour.

In this chapter, you will study the concept of business environment, its nature and scope. And then you will study the components of business environment, and lastly you will also study about relationship between business environment and strategic management.

1.2 CONCEPT OF BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

In a general sense, all businesses aim to achieve multiple objectives. A business manager identifies and sets some important objectives like survival, stability, growth, profitability, and efficiency. Enterprise needs to balance these objectives. Profit is the biggest stimulus for the survival of the business, and its future development. There is always a risk involved in business, and profit is the reward for taking the risk. Businesses can be established, but it is difficult to survive in this competitive world where the whole world is one market. So, it is important for businesses to scan the environment.

Environment refers to all external forces which affect the functioning of business. Environment factors are largely, if not totally, external and beyond the control of individual industrial enterprises and their managements. The surrounding in which business operates is called business environment.

The word 'Business Environment' has been defined by various authors as follows:

According to **Keith Davis**, *business environment is the aggregate of all conditions, events and influences that surround and affect it.*

According to **Reinecke and Schoell**, *the environment of business consists of all those external things to which it is exposed and by which it may be influenced directly or indirectly.*

These definitions give a clear understanding of the business environment. We can say that the business environment is a combination or mixture of complex, dynamic, and uncontrollable external factors within which a business is to be operated.

The change in tastes and preferences of customers, introduction of new technologies, innovations, government policies, etc., all are parts of the business environment. Business needs to accept and adapt these changes promptly to survive in the market. So, it is necessary for the business to analyse the business environment.

1.2.1 NATURE AND SCOPE OF BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Nature of Business Environment

The business environment of an organisation usually poses threats as well as opportunities. To grasp the opportunities and reduce the threat, it is important to know the nature of business environment. Following are some points which describe nature of business environment:

- **Internal and external environment:** Every business is surrounded by internal and external environment. Internal environment can be controlled by an organisation, like men, money, material, machine, and method, whereas the external environment is uncontrollable like political conditions, technologies, legal regulations, etc.
- **Dynamic and ever-changing:** Business environment keeps on changing frequently in terms of technologies, government rules and regulations, socio-economic conditions, etc., which make business dynamic.
- **Complexity of the environment:** Business environment cannot be easily analysed because there is too much complexity involved. Environment consists of a number

of factors, events, conditions, and influences derived from different sources which impact business, thus, making the business complex.

- **Inter-relatedness:** Factors in the business environment are related to each other. For example, change in political parties will result in changing the government rules, fiscal policies, market conditions, technology, etc. So, all the factors need to be scanned properly because these factors are inter-related to each other.
- **Uncertainty:** It is difficult to predict the changes that will take place in future because environment keeps changing. These changes are uncontrollable. So, business can only try to combat these challenges. For example, in the case of fashion industries, changes take place so frequently that the economy could collapse any time.
- **Impact:** Impact means the effect of the environment on business. Business environment has both long-term and short-term impacts on business. For example, different firms may be influenced differently by changes in monetary policy.
- **Inter-dependence:** A business firm and its environment are mutually interdependent. The economic status of a country affects the development of technology, or it may change the lifestyle of people.

Scope of Business Environment

The aspects which fall under the business environment are as follows:

- **Internal and external environment:** Internal environment includes all those factors that are within an organisation and impart strength or cause weakness in business. For example, inefficient human resource, superior raw material, etc.

External environment includes those factors which are beyond the control of business and are outside the organisation. They provide opportunities and pose threat to business. For example, change in political conditions, technological change, etc.

- **Specific and general environment:** Specific environment includes external forces that directly impact or influence organisations' decisions and actions and are directly relevant to the achievement of organisations' goals. The main forces that make up the specific environment are customers, suppliers, competitors, and pressure groups.

General environment includes the economic, political/legal, socio-cultural, demographic, technological, and global conditions that affect organisations. External forces do not affect organisations to a great extent, but organisations must plan, organise, lead, and control their activities taking into account these factors.

- **Micro environment and macro environment:** Micro environment impacts the working of a particular business. It has a direct impact on business activities. It includes customers, suppliers, market intermediaries, competitors, etc. These factors are controllable to some extent.

Macro environment is general environment that impacts the working of all businesses. It is uncontrollable and influences indirectly. Political conditions, economy, technology, etc., come under macro environment.

- **Controllable and uncontrollable environment:** All those factors, which are governed by business come under the controllable environment. Internal factors are treated as controllable factors, like men, material, machine, money, etc.

Uncontrollable factors are external and beyond the control of business, like technological change and law related change.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. _____ is the aggregate of all conditions, events, and influences that surround and affect it.
2. All those factors which are governed by business come under the controllable environment. (True/False)
3. _____ includes all those factors that are within an organisation and impart strength or cause weakness in business.

1.3 COMPONENTS OF BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

The performance of an organisation is affected by the business environment. It has a far-reaching impact on its survival, profit, and growth. There are certain forces inside and outside the organisation. These forces affect the business both in positive and negative ways.

Figure 1 displays components of the business environment:

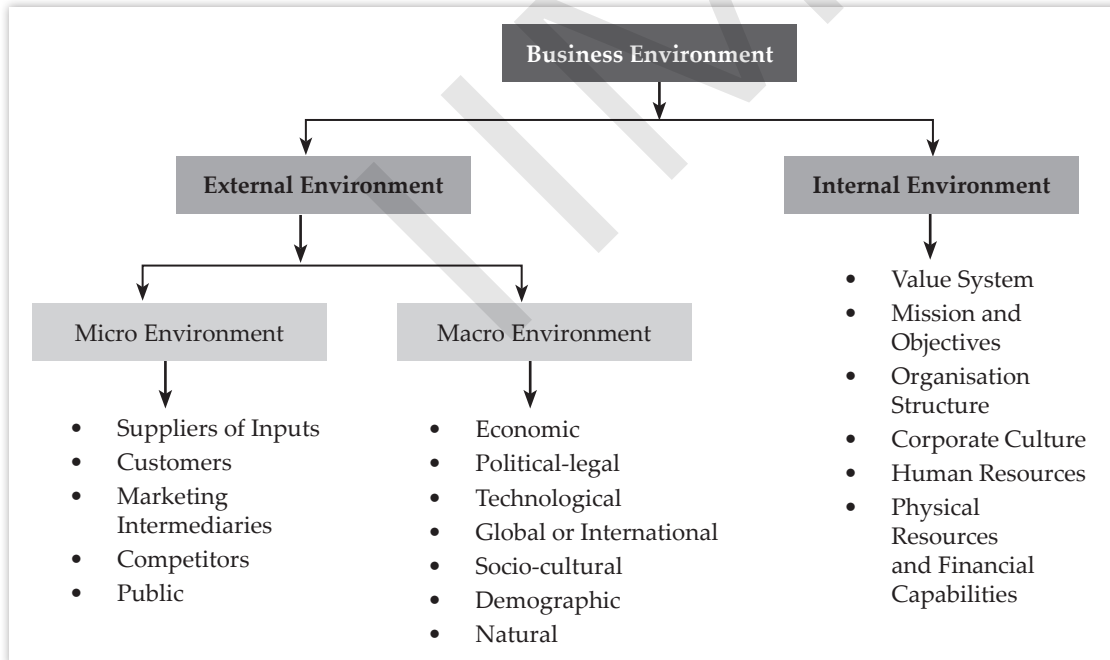


FIGURE 1: Components of Business Environment

Various components of the business environment are as follows:

- **Internal environment:** These are those factors or conditions that exist within an organisation and affect its performance. These factors are controllable in nature and organisation can try to change or modify these factors. An organisation's

resources, such as men, material, money, methods and machines come under internal environment. Various internal factors are as follows:

- **Value system:** The values are the ethical beliefs that guide the organisation in achieving its mission and objectives. It is framed by top-level managers, like board of directors. The extent to which the value system is shared by all in the organisation is an important factor contributing to its success.
 - **Mission and objectives:** The objective is the end towards which business activities are directed. All businesses focus on maximisation of profit. A mission is defined as the overall purpose or reason for its existence. A mission guides and influences an organisation's decisions and economic activities. An organisation can change or modify its mission and objectives accordingly.
 - **Organisation structure:** The organisational structure is the hierarchy in business that defines roles, responsibilities, and supervision. The composition of the board of directors, the professionalism of management, etc., come under organisation structure and are important factors influencing business decisions. For efficient working of a business organisation and to facilitate prompt decision-making, the organisation structure should be conducive.
 - **Corporate culture:** Shared values and beliefs in an organisation which determine its internal environment, which is called corporate culture. Organisation where there is strict supervision and control results in a lack of flexibility and unsatisfied employees. The sets of values that help members understand what organisation stands for how it does work, what it considers, and the cultural values of business, forces of business, and so on. It helps in direction of activities.
 - **Human resources:** The human quality of a firm is an important factor in internal environment. Skills, qualities, capabilities, attitude, competencies, and commitment of its employees, etc., could contribute to the strengths and weaknesses of an organisation. Organisations may find it difficult to carry out modernisation and redesigning because of resistance by its employees.
 - **Physical resources and financial capabilities:** Physical resources, such as plant and equipment, facilities, and financial capabilities of a firm determine its competitive strength, which is an important factor for determining its efficiency and unit cost of production. Also, research and development capabilities of a company determines its ability to introduce innovations which enhance the productivity of workers. Financial capabilities are company's source of fund generation.
- **External environment:** These are those factors and conditions which are outside the organisation and affect the performance of business. External factors are further divided into micro environment and macro environment which are as follows:
- **Micro environment:** Those factors which have direct impact on business. The various constituents of the micro environment are as follows:
 - ✓ **Suppliers of inputs:** The suppliers of inputs are important factors in the external micro environment of a firm. Suppliers provide raw material and resources to the firm. A firm should have more than one supplier for proper inflow of inputs.

- ✓ **Customers:** They are the buyers of the firm's products and services. Customers are an important part of external micro environment because sales of a product or service are critical for a firm's survival and growth, so it is necessary to keep the customers satisfied.
- ✓ **Marketing intermediaries:** Intermediaries play an essential role in selling and distributing its products to the final customers. Marketing intermediaries are an important link between a business firm and its ultimate customers. Retailers and wholesalers buy in bulk and sell business products and services to the ultimate consumer.
- ✓ **Competitors:** Competitors are rivals in business. Competition can be based on the pricing of products or on competitive advertising. For example, organisations may sponsor some events to promote the sale of different varieties and models of their products. Business formulates strategies after analysing their competitor.
- ✓ **Public:** Public or groups, such as environmentalists, media groups, women's associations, and consumer protection groups are important factors in external micro environment. Public, according to **Philip Kotler**, *is any group that has an actual or potential interest in or impact on the company's ability to achieve its objective.*
- **Macro Environment:** These are the factors or conditions which are general to all businesses and are uncontrollable. Because of the uncontrollable nature of macro forces, a firm needs to adjust or adapt it to these external forces. These factors are as follows:
 - ✓ **Economic environment:** All those forces which have an economic impact on businesses are called the economic environment. It includes agriculture, industrial production, infrastructure, and planning, basic economic philosophy, stages of economic development, trade cycles, national income, per capita income, savings, money, etc. For example, low per capita income will negatively impact business because people have less money to spend.
 - ✓ **Political-legal environment:** The activities of legislature, executive, and judiciary play a vital role in shaping, directing, developing, and controlling business activities. Rules and regulations, framed by the government, like licencing policy, polythene ban, etc., affect the business. Business growth can be achieved by using a stable and dynamic political-legal environment.
 - ✓ **Technological environment:** Systematic application of scientific or other organised knowledge for practical tasks or activities is called technology. As it is changing fast, businessmen should keep a close look on those technological changes for its adaptation in their business activities.
 - ✓ **Global or international environment:** The global environment is also important for shaping business activity. In the era of globalisation, whole world is a market. Business analyses international environment to cope with the changes.
 - ✓ **Socio-cultural environment:** People's attitude towards work and wealth, lifestyle, ethical issues, role of family, marriage, religion, and education, and also social responsiveness of business affect the business.

NOTES

- ✓ **Demographic environment:** Population size and growth, life expectancy of the people, rural-urban distribution of population, the technological skills and educational levels of labour force come under demographic environment. These features also affect the functioning of organisations.
- ✓ **Natural environment:** The natural environment plays an important role as it provides raw materials and energy for production in a firm. Natural environment consists of geographical and ecological factors such as minerals and oil reserves, water and forest resources, weather and climatic conditions, and port facilities. These are very important for many business activities. For example, in places where temperatures are high, the demand for coolers and air conditioners is high. Also, demand for clothes depends on weather and climatic conditions. Natural calamities like floods, droughts, earthquakes, etc., immensely affect business activities.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

4. _____ and _____ are the two types of external environment.
5. Which of the following comes under the economic environment?
 - a. Education
 - b. Population size
 - c. GDP
 - d. Lifestyle
6. Marketing intermediaries are an important link between a business firm and its ultimate customers. (True/False)

ACTIVITY

Choose any company of your choice and note the internal and external factors affecting its business.

1.4 RELATION BETWEEN BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT AND STRATEGIC MANAGEMENT

The set of decisions and actions that result in the formulation and implementation of plans designed to achieve a company's objectives are called strategic management. Strategic decisions are based on what a manager forecasts rather than what he knows. Strategic decisions have complex implications for more areas of the firm. The characteristics of strategic management decisions vary with the level of strategic management activity.

- Strategic management helps in defining the objectives and policies for the business. To develop a strategy, a business needs to scan its environment.
- In formulating a strategy, the strategic decision makers must analyse internal as well as external conditions in the environment, which are described in the following sections:
 - The analysis of the internal and external environment will help managers determine what goals and mission they can or should adopt, and the strategic options that are available.

- Strategic planning should be based on a business environment analysis. The world today is changing at a rapid pace. So it is very important for companies to scan the business environment more clearly and make up strategic planning that can match the changes.
- The environment is changing, and the strategy which is suitable for companies today may bring threat tomorrow. A strategy is effective only if it is flexible.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. Strategic management does not help in defining the objectives and policies for the business. (True/False)
8. _____ are based on what a manager forecasts rather than what he knows.

1.5 SUMMARY

- Business environment is a combination or mixture of complex, dynamic, and uncontrollable external factors within which a business is to be operated.
- Business environment is complex, uncertain, inter-related, dynamic, and interdependent.
- Specific environments include external forces that directly impact or influence organisations' decisions and actions and are directly relevant to the achievement of organisations' goals.
- General environment includes the broad economic, political/legal, socio-cultural, demographic, technological, and global conditions.
- All those factors which are governed by business come under controllable environment.
- Internal environment includes all those factors that are within an organisation and impart strength or cause weakness in business.
- External environment includes those factors which are beyond the control of business and are outside the organisation.
- The set of decisions and actions that result in the formulation and implementation of plans designed to achieve company objectives are called strategic management.
- Strategic management helps in defining the objectives and policies for the business. To develop a strategy, a business needs to scan its environment.

1.6 KEY WORDS

- **Opportunities:** The favourable conditions that can lead to a positive outcome.
- **Threats:** The unfavourable conditions that can have a negative outcome.
- **Globalisation:** An integration of economies, industries, markets, cultures, and policy-making around the world.
- **Strategic management:** The set of decisions and actions that result in the formulation and implementation of plans designed to achieve an organisation's objectives.

1.7 CASE STUDY: TATA NANO – ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS

In 1868, Tata Gamsi founded the Tata Group. It is the largest conglomerate in India and is owned by Tata Sons. Tata Motors is a leader in the manufacturing of commercial, passenger, military, and electric vehicles. It is also the world's 4th largest truck and 2nd largest bus manufacturer by volume. In January 2008, Tata Motors introduced Tata Nano, dubbed the 'People's Car' and also known as the world's cheapest car. The car was launched in March 2009, which created a significant impact on the Indian automobile market. Tata Motors Ltd., is one of the few companies which has its own R&D centres. It has established an engineering research centre in Pune (with a strength of around 3,500 personnel).

The main target group of customers for Tata Nano are the lower- and middle- income families in India, many of whom resisted purchasing four-wheelers mainly due to the price, affordability, and maintenance costs. Launching of Tata Nano gave an opportunity for these groups to purchase a car within their means.

During the initial launch, the Tata Nano was priced at about Rs. 1 lakh. In December 2008, the cost of the car increased significantly due to higher raw material costs.

TABLE A: Passenger Car Segments in India

Segment	Type	Length
A1	Mini	Up to 3400 mm
A2	Compact	3401-4000 mm
A3	Mid-size	4001-4500 mm
A4	Executive	4501-4700 mm
A5	Premium	4701-5000 mm
A6	Luxury	Above 5000 mm

Source: SIAM

TABLE B: Awards Tata Nano Received

Awards	Awarding Organisation	Year
Indian Car of the Year (ICOTY) Award.	Instituted by leading automotive magazines in India, in association with JK Tyre	2009
Business Standard Motoring Indian Car of the Year	Business Standard	2010
Good Design Award	Museum of Architecture and Design together with the European Centre for Architecture, Art, Design, and Urban Studies	2010
Gold Prize in the Best New Product segment	Edison Awards	2010
Best Car Advertisement of the Year Award	Bloomberg, UTV, Autocar India Awards	2011

Further, in 2013, Tata Nano was rated as the most trusted 4-wheeler brand by Brand Trust Report India Study.

Tata Motors was so confident about the Nano that they thought this was going to be a massive success. But it failed and became one of the most disaster products in the history of marketing.

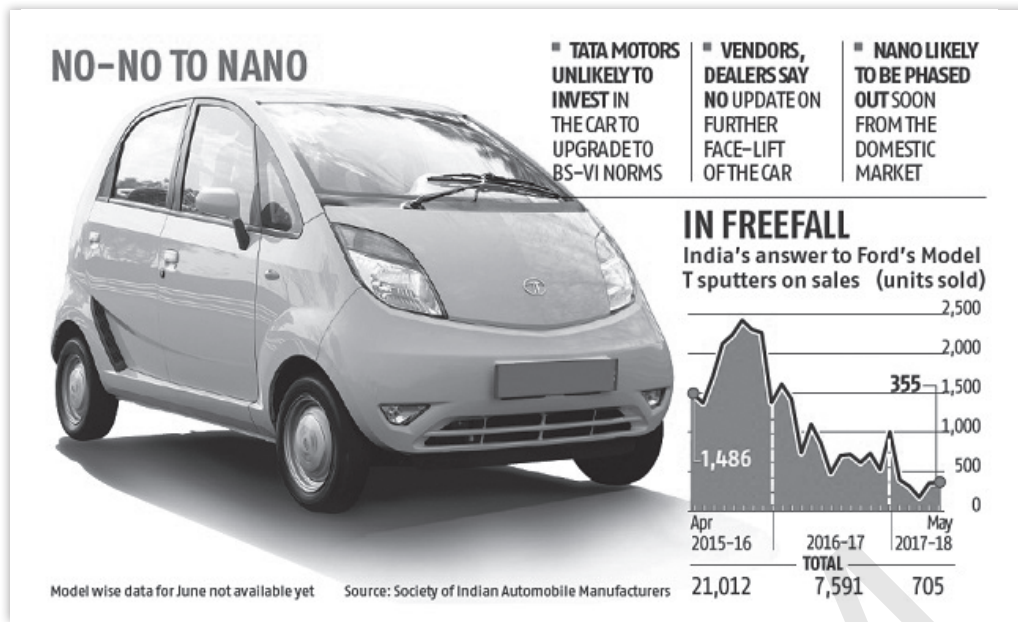


FIGURE A: TATA Nano Sales

TABLE C: TATA Nano Sales Figure (2017-2018)

Month	Oct. 2017	Nov. 2017	Dec. 2017	Jan. 2018	Feb. 2018	Mar. 2018	Apr. 2018	May 2018	Jun. 2018
Tata Nano GenX	57	121	94	62	52	29	42	20	3

Tata Nano Failure Reasons

- Tata Nano projects itself as the cheapest car. Nobody wants to drive the cheapest car. Buying a car is related to social status and prestige in society.

Ratan Tata says:

"It (Nano) became termed as the cheapest car by the public, and, i am sorry to say, by ourselves, not by me, but the company when it was marketing it. I think that is unfortunate."

- So many Nano cars catch fire. This created a complete buzz in the media. Despite the low price, everyone hesitated to buy them because of the incidences of fire.
- After the announcement of Nano, the second-hand market for cars faces a drop in price by 15% to 20%. New cars like the Alto 800, Maruti 800, Indica, etc., also have to reduce the price. People called it a Nano effect.
- The vision of Tata was an affordable car that could fit a family of four. But, in reality, it did not fit an Indian family of four with ease.

Source: <https://bking.in/tata-nano-failure-case-study/>

QUESTIONS

1. What was the vision of Ratan Tata behind the launch of Nano project? How did he analyse the environment?

(Hint: Low-income group people, safety, substitute for a bike.)

- In spite of an extensive research and development programme, Nano was a huge failure. Why?

(**Hint:** Poor vision and mission, competition, quality, etc.)

1.8 EXERCISE

- Describe the forces which affect individual enterprises directly and immediately in their day-to-day work.
- Explain how understanding the business environment helps the management in coping with the rapid change and identifying opportunities and threats.
- ABC Pvt. Ltd., was operating its business in the USA. The company started exporting its product to India with the introduction of the New Industrial Policy in 1991. The company appointed retailers in India who had direct links with suppliers to replenish stocks when needed. Identify and explain the dimensions of business environment discussed above.
- Explain the importance of internal and external environments while formulating strategy in organisations.

1.9 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Concept of Business Environment	1.	Business environment
	2.	True
	3.	Internal Environment
Components of Business Environment	4.	Micro environment; macro environment
	5.	c. GDP
	6.	True
Relation between Business Environment and Strategic Management	7.	False
	8.	Strategic decisions

1.10 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Worthington, I., Britton, C. and Thompson, E. (2023) *The Business Environment: A Global Perspective*. Hoboken, NJ: Pearson.
- Aplin, A. (2022) *The Business Environment*. Wokingham: Osborne Books Limited.

E-REFERENCES

- (2019). Retrieved from <http://www.pondiuni.edu.in/storage/dde/downloads/h1040.pdf>
- file:///C:/Users/User/Downloads/Business%20Environment.pdf
- (2019). Retrieved from http://shodhganga.inflibnet.ac.in/bitstream/10603/38955/13/13_c5.pdf

Environmental Scanning

Table of Contents

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Meaning and Importance of Environmental Scanning
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 2.3 Business Environment Analysis
 - 2.3.1 Steps in Business Environment Analysis
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 2.4 SWOT Analysis
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 2.5 Assessing Risk in Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 2.6 Summary
- 2.7 Key Words
- 2.8 Case Study
- 2.9 Exercise
- 2.10 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 2.11 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe the environmental scanning
- Explain the importance of environmental scanning
- Discuss the steps of business environment analysis
- Describe the SWOT technique of business environment analysis
- Explain the meaning of risk
- Explain how organisations assess risk

2.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied the concept of business environment. The chapter also discussed the components of business environment. The relation between business environment and strategic environment have been described at the end of the chapter.

An organisation functions within a particular environment, which is comprised of internal and external environments. The internal environment of an organisation includes its employees, its policies that exist in the organisation, its strategy, its mission, etc. The internal environment is responsible for reflecting the common purpose of the organisation. The external environment includes the government, regulating agencies, customers, suppliers, public at large, etc. They affect the business strategy of the organisation. The internal environment is managed internally by the key personnel of the organisation. Thus, it is important for a organisation to scan the external environment in detail to make an strategy that could work for it. The SWOT technique is used to make a complete analysis of the internal and external environment of an organisation.

In this chapter, you will study the meaning and importance of environmental scanning. You will also study the business environment analysis and SWOT analysis in detail. Towards the end of the chapter, risks in business environment have been discussed.

2.2 MEANING AND IMPORTANCE OF ENVIRONMENTAL SCANNING

The term 'environment' means surroundings near you, which includes all components of environment such as physical environment, social environment, and governing environment. Physical environment consists of plants, land, water, and all natural resources. Social environment consists of labourers, staff, management, suppliers, customers or all other human resources. Governing environment is rules, regulations, and policies of the government. The term 'scanning' means the process of evaluation or assessment of anything with the purpose of gathering data on any subject and coming to a conclusion.

Thus, you can conclude that environmental scanning is a process in which an organisation makes assessment or analysis of all the components of the environment and scans their impact on its functioning, stability, growth, and profits.

For effective environmental scanning, an organisation must follow the following steps:

1. **Defining the type of business:** First, the organisation should assess what type of business it is dealing with and later on decide how environment will impact it. The same environment affects the clothing business and food business differently.
2. **Defining the scope of project:** If scanning is done for a particular project, then it is necessary to define the scope of the project. The scope will decide how environment will affect the project of the organisation.
3. **Defining the type of environment:** It is important to define what type of environment an organisation is working in. It is important to consider all types of components of environment, such as physical, social or governing, and how the business will be affected due to them.
4. **Preparing a report:** A detailed report should be made on how the organisation will be affected by the surrounding environment.
5. **Monitoring:** Environment is not a static thing. It keeps on changing its features and characteristics. For example, employees keep on changing their jobs, customers keep on changing their choices, government keeps on changing its policies, etc. Thus, the environment and its impacts should also be constantly monitored.

If an effective environmental scanning is done properly, then it gives the following benefits:

- It gives a clear picture of what kind of environment the organisation is working in. Also, the organisation becomes aware of the features of different components of environment.
- Organisation gets the idea of the opportunities and threats possible in the environment.
- Organisation is able to define the scope of its business, like how much the organisation can grow and to what extent it can raise its targets and profits.
- Organisation becomes aware of its existing and possible competitors.
- Continuous monitoring of the environment makes an organisation aware of the upcoming dangers and updates for future challenges. This makes an organisation aware of its customers' choices, so that the organisation could further improve the quality of its products or services.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. _____ means the process of evaluation or assessment of anything with the purpose of gathering data on any subject matter and coming to a conclusion.

2.3 BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS

The environment analysis process is not a universal process. It is rather a dynamic process which may change from one business to another. For example, the business process analysis for airline services would differ from the one used for beauty salon services.

A business manager plays a vital role in the analysis of business environment. He needs to thoroughly understand the availability of opportunities and possible threats. As per the analysis, an organisation needs to work on the available opportunities as per its strengths and weaknesses.

Following are the steps of business environment analysis:

1. **Scanning:** 'Scanning' means analysing all parts or components of anything in order to develop some features of that thing. Being the first component of the environment analysis process, this analyses the environmental factors of an organisation. The purpose of scanning is as follows:
 - Scanning helps in identifying the possibilities of environmental changes, which may affect the working of an organisation.
 - Understanding the present changes in the environment.

Scanning is basically a non-structured activity. This is because the data in scanning is unlimited but ambiguous and imprecise in nature. So, it is difficult to distinguish what data is relevant and what is not. For the environment analysis process, it is the basic challenge to extract the relevant data and make the best use of it.

2. **Monitoring:** 'Monitoring' means keeping a constant eye on or checking on something. Thus, in environment analysis, monitoring keeps a check on environmental changes from time to time. For example, employees keep on changing, natural resources keep on changing, and the government and its policies keep on changing.

Thus, after scanning, it is necessary to keep monitoring what sort of changes the concerned environment is facing and what impact it might cause on the normal functioning of the organisation. Constant monitoring ensures that business-persons are aware, and make responses the possible change in the business environment.

3. **Forecasting:** Scanning and monitoring are steps on those aspects which have already happened, and organisations cannot change them. These are sunk aspects, i.e., which have already taken place in the past and will not change in the future. But when an organisation is formulating a strategy for its operations, it might require future prospects and future orientation too. Forecasting is, thus, making any predictions about the future and is, consequently, a part of business environment analysis. Forecasting can be done for any business-related project or aspect. For example, a forecasting can be made about whether a particular technology will arrive in the market or not, what would be the government's new policies regarding tax, would customers change their preferences or would they like the innovation in the products or services, etc. These kinds of questions are being attempted to be answered in forecasting. Scanning and monitoring are comparatively easy tasks

than forecasting. Forecasting is a complex task which requires brainstorming, with which future predictions are made. The scope of forecasting is more specific and clearer than monitoring and scanning. The results of monitoring and scanning are accurate, as the study of something present is done. But the results of forecasting are contingent on the future.

4. **Assessing:** After scanning, monitoring, and forecasting the business environment, organisation must make a proper evaluation or assessment of the collected data in the above-mentioned steps. The organisation also needs to analyse what impact it will have on functioning. Assessment will provide answer to the following questions:
 - What strategy needs to be made for the smooth functioning of the organisation?
 - What changes might an organisation want to bring to its current strategy?
 - What alternatives does an organisation have in case of negative changes in environment?
 - How will an organisation face the coming changes?

2.3.1 | STEPS IN BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS

Following steps need to be followed in the process of business environment analysis:

- A. Scanning all the required components
- B. Grouping the scanned components
- C. Observing the internal components
- D. Monitoring the external components
- E. Outlining variables for analysis
- F. Usage of different techniques for analysis
- G. Forecasting future outcomes
- H. Formulating strategies
 - I. Execution of formulated strategies
 - J. Monitoring

Let us discuss the above-mentioned steps in detail:

- A. **Scanning all the required components:** The environment of an organisation consists of various components. But not all factors and aspects would be equally important or even important for the functioning of an organisation. A good strategist always distinguishes the relevant factors and scans them in detail. He/she looks for all the required components of environment and studies the relevant factors in detail. This way, he/she collects the required components and presents a scanned report.
- B. **Grouping the scanned components:** In the first step, the required raw information is gathered. In this step, the collected components are to be grouped; for example, what is affecting the stability, what is affecting the sales, what is affecting the growth, etc. Grouping is made up of all the collected information.

- C. **Observing the internal components:** After scanning and grouping the relevant components of external environment, the strategist looks at the internal components of the organisation. For example, how the employees are reacting to the environmental changes and how smoothly an organisation is functioning as the external components change in the environment.
- D. **Monitoring the external components:** As an environment is not static in nature, it keeps on changing, for example, changing in government policies, changing in customer's preferences, changes in supplier's rates, etc. Thus, just one-time scanning is not a fruitful activity for the organisation. An organisation needs to constantly monitor and be aware of the upcoming changes.
- E. **Outlining variables for analysis:** Variables are the components responsible for bringing a change in an external environment. Some variables are national minimum wage, GDP, tax policies, competitors' policies, customers' preferences, etc. A strategist must outline all such variables and study them from time to time, so that he could bring the necessary change in its functioning.
- F. **Usage of different techniques for analysis:** Different techniques are being used for a proper environment analysis, such as benchmarking, scenario building, network methods, etc. The term 'benchmarking' means setting the best standard as per the industry and then comparing the company's performance with the set standards. Scenario building is a presentation of the overall picture of the system of the organisation along with the affecting components. Network method is a complex process which is used to analyse the external environment of the organisation. This method helps in analysing the available opportunities in the market and studying possible threats. A network method also judges how internal strengths and weaknesses will be affected by the external environment. Essential data can be gathered through the Delphi method, conceptualising, studying and verifying enquiry method.
- G. **Forecasting future outcomes:** In a business environment analysis, it is necessary to make predictions for future outcomes. A good strategist will always make the future predictions of how the environmental components may affect the functioning of the organisation. An assessment of past results can also be made in this step.
- H. **Formulating strategies:** It is also one of the important steps in business environment analysis. After the assessment of all the above environmental components, an organisation formulates the required strategies for its functioning. As you have already studied, conduct the SWOT analysis before making an effective strategy. SWOT analysis means analysing the strengths, weaknesses, available opportunities and possible threats to the organisation. There are various ways of formulating or designing a strategy. Internal or core components are being recorded in Strategic Advantage Profiles (SAP). However, external components are being recorded in the Environmental Threat and Opportunity Profile (ETOP). Both SAP and ETOP profiles can be compounded into a SWOT profile. To evaluate internal and external components, the External Factor Evaluation (EFE) matrix is being used by the strategists as a tool.

Let us discuss the above-mentioned tools in brief:

- **SAP:** It is a tool which is being used by strategists to examine internal components of the organisation, like strengths and weaknesses. The processes

of both ETOP and SAP are very similar. Both have positive, neutral, and negative signs. The five utilitarian areas in the majority of the associations learned to distinguish their quality and shortcoming are human assets and corporate arranging, fund or bookkeeping, generation or activity, showcasing or conveyance and innovative work. Every one of these zones is important to give a reasonable image of the key position of the association.

- **ETOP:** It analyses the external components of the business environment. It is basically the study of factors that are responsible externally for affecting the business functioning. It is essential to study the impact of external components which might create an impact on an organisation. Components can be both positive and negative, or even neutral in nature. Thus, it becomes necessary to determine which aspects will create a positive impact and which will create a negative impact.
 - **EFE:** It is a tool that helps organisations assess their external environment. It involves identifying and evaluating external factors that could impact the business, both positively and negatively. These factors may include economic conditions, technological trends, competitive forces, legal and regulatory issues, and more.
- I. **Execution of formulated strategies:** After the above steps, a strategist implements and executes upon the formulated strategies. The strategist always evaluates how he had formulated the given strategy and how it could be effectively implemented. He/she also makes the required future predictions. This process is also often refers to the process of SWOT analysis.
 - J. **Monitoring:** The strategist must keep monitoring the external environment. As an environment keeps on changing; thus, it is necessary to have a continuous look at the changes and bringing the required changes to the plan or strategy.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

2. What is the first component of business environment analysis?
3. Which component of business environment analysis involves evaluation?
4. What is the full form of SAP?
5. What is the full form of ETOP?

2.4 SWOT ANALYSIS

SWOT analysis refers to the analysis of both the internal and external environments of an organisation. In this term, S stands for Strengths, and W stands for Weaknesses. Both of these terms refer to internal components of an organisation. O stands for available Opportunities in the market, and T stands for the possible Threats in the market. Both of these are the external components of the organisation.

Let us discuss these above-mentioned terms in detail:

- **Strengths:** The term 'strengths' basically means the things you are good at or your capabilities. In the organisational context, it means the core competencies

or capabilities of an organisation for which it can gain strategic advantages from its competitors. Even if it does not gain any advantages over competitors, it refers to an organisation's capacities in which the organisation has affirmative aspects. Strength is necessary for every organisation to gain competitive advantages. For example, some organisations have their employees as their strength, and some organisations may have low cost of production as their strength.

- **Weaknesses:** Weaknesses are the exact opposites of strengths. While strengths are competitive advantages, weaknesses are competitive disadvantages of an organisation. Weaknesses are responsible for downfall of an organisation. The term 'weakness' also refers to the things in which the organisation is not good. For example, an organisation might not have better marketing strategies in comparison to its competitors. Then, in such a case, marketing would be its weakness.
- **Opportunities:** The term 'opportunity' means a chance to grab on in a positive sense. This is actually a favourable condition or circumstances present in the external environment, which should be grabbed by the organisation in order to increase its strengths and gain competitive advantages. A company's strategist must be aware of the coming opportunity in the market so that it can grab them on time and could raise revenues and profits; for example, a sudden rise in demand of customers, new government policies in the favour of the organisation, emerging technologies, etc.
- **Threats:** The term 'threat' means exposing the vulnerability of something which might create an adverse impact. In an external environment, if suddenly or even gradually some changes occur, and if those are not in favour of the organisation, then these are called threats to the organisation. For example, a change in preferences of customers, and changes in government policies, which are not in favour of the organisation, are considered threats to the organisation.

It is not necessary that an organisation have only one single strength. An organisation might have one or more strengths at one time. More number of strengths would give an organisation more competitive advantages. An organisation might have one or more weaknesses, which would degrade its competitive position in the market. The weakness of an organisation would factually hamper the growth of an organisation. The strengths and weaknesses of an organisation could be collectively determined and this combination would create a collective impact on the organisation, and it is called a circumstance of synergistic effect. The concept of synergy says that if two things are merged together, then the resulting effect could be greater or lesser. This means when the strengths and weaknesses of a company are understood together, then they could create a resulting strength or resulting weakness. This could be better understood as 'two plus two could be either five or three'.

The SWOT analysis is a tool to evaluate the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats of an organisation. Every organisation must do this analysis very effectively, as all these areas are necessary to be understood in detail. A strategy would be formed on the basis of these elements only. Through SWOT analysis, a detailed study could be done about both internal and external factors of an organisation.

The SWOT analysis as a whole matches the organisation's strengths and weaknesses with the market's opportunities and threats. It is in the organisation's self-interest

to use its strengths to exploit the available opportunities in the market. Further, an organisation must neutralise its weaknesses and avoid possible threats in the external environment of the organisation. A four-cell matrix is being used to perform the SWOT analysis. In this matrix, the cells are referred to as strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

6. In the following options, what is an opportunity for a business?
 - a. A business has poor marketing strategies.
 - b. A business has a good labour force.
 - c. A business is exposed to low demand for its products.
 - d. A business can have a high demands for its products in the coming future.
7. Out of the following options, which one is the strength of a business?
 - a. A business has poor marketing strategies.
 - b. A business has a good labour force.
 - c. A business is exposed to low demand for a product.
 - d. A business can have high demand for its product in the coming future.

2.5 ASSESSING RISK IN BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

The term 'risk' means a situation or circumstance where there is an exposure to danger. Business risk, therefore, means when an organisation is exposed to danger or threat, which could lower its profits or which may hamper the achievement of its targets. Any threat that may harm the normal functioning of an organisation is known as business risk.

Any exposed risk could affect the organisation in the following ways:

- It could disrupt normal working.
- It could create an adverse effect on sales or revenue.
- It could defame the brand image.
- It could have an adverse impact on growth.

It is not factually correct every time to blame managers or staff for the risk. A risk to business occurs for many reasons.

Following are the reasons which may cause a business risk:

- Preference of customers, their demand, and sales
- Overall per-unit cost to the company
- Existing competition in the market
- Economic climate
- Government policies, rules, and regulations

Assessing risk means making an estimate of what level of risk is present in the given business situation. Thus, risk assessment is actually risk measurement. Following steps are to be taken to assess risk:

1. **Define the type of risk:** There are various types of risks that are present in the market, to which a business is exposed. The first step is to identify the types of risks that are present.

There are the following types of risks present in the market:

- **Financial risks:** Financial risks are risks which affect the financial or monetary position of an organisation. Financial risks include credit risk, liquidity risk, asset-based risk, foreign investment risk, equity risk, currency risk, etc. In these types of risks, the organisation faces a money crisis.
 - **Marketing risks:** When an organisation fails to make a better marketing strategy for its products or services, it faces such types of risks. These include a failure of marketing of products or services, risk related to product development, product pricing, product promotion, etc.
 - **Operational risks:** When an organisation fails to properly operate its day-to-day functioning, it is known as operational risk. In these kinds of risks, employees are not able to work properly for the organisation. For example, risk of electricity cut off, risk of disruption in the Internet, etc.
 - **Strategic risks:** When there is a failure in proper strategy making or when strategy is not updated as per the changes in the environment, such situation is known as strategic risk; for example, failure of management in adapting new technology, failure in meeting customers' demands, etc.
 - **Workforce risks:** When the workforce of the organisation does not perform its duties well or does not work for the organisation, it is known as workforce risks; for example, strikes of labourers, continuous absence of labourers or employees, etc.
2. **Estimate the likelihood of occurring:** After analysing all types of risks an organisation needs to estimate what are the fair chances of each risk occurring in the future. Various techniques, like percentages or probability, can be used to estimate the chances of occurrence of risk. For example, there are twenty-five percent chances that the demand is going to fall in the coming time for the said project.
 3. **Estimate the loss:** After identifying the risks, the organisation has to estimate the chances of its occurrence and the extent of loss it may cause to the organisation. For example, there are twenty-five percent chances that the demand may fall for the said project, and, consequently, the organisation may suffer a loss of revenue of one million rupees in one month of time.
 4. **Decide whether or not to take the risk:** The organisation has come to a rough figure of how much loss it is going to suffer if the risk proves to be right. The organisation makes a decision about whether or not that risk is worthy of taking. In the above example, there are seventy-five percent chances that the demand will

not fall, and if the demand rises, the organisation will have a profit of ten million rupees in the coming month. So, considering all these factors, project is worthy to be taken.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

8. _____ is a situation of exposure to danger.
9. Failure to adapt to a new technology is _____ risk.

2.6 SUMMARY

- Environmental scanning is a process in which an organisation makes an assessment or analysis of all the components of the environment and scans their impact on its functioning, stability, growth, and profits.
- The environment analysis process is not a universal process. It is a dynamic process, which may change from one business to another.
- SWOT analysis refers to the analysis of both internal and external environments of an organisation. In this term, S stands for Strengths, and W stands for Weaknesses. Both of these terms refer to internal components of an organisation. O stands for available Opportunities of the market, and T stands for possible Threats in the market. Both these are external components.
- Business risk means when an organisation is exposed to danger or threat, which could lower its profits, which may hamper the achievement of target. Any threat which may harm the normal functioning of an organisation is known as business risk.
- Assessing risk means making an estimate of what level of risk is present in the given business situation. Thus, risk assessment is actually risk measurement.

2.7 KEY WORDS

- **Environment:** The surroundings around anything/ an organisation.
- **Scanning:** The process of analysing all the parts of anything in order to develop its feature.
- **Monitoring:** The process of keeping a constant eye on something to check on a regular basis.
- **Strengths:** The ability with which someone performs very well.
- **Weakness:** The inability due to which someone performs very badly.
- **Opportunity:** A chance available in a given situation.
- **Threat:** Threat means exposing vulnerability of something, which might create an adverse impact.
- **Risk:** An exposure of something to a possible loss.

2.8 CASE STUDY: SWOT ANALYSIS OF NETFLIX

Netflix, a global entertainment giant, has revolutionised the way audiences consume content. Founded in 1997 as a DVD rental-by-mail service, the company swiftly evolved into a streaming powerhouse, reshaping the landscape of television and film.

The SWOT analysis of Netflix assesses its strengths and weaknesses and outlines strategies for future expansion by leveraging market opportunities and mitigating threats. As a leading streaming company, Netflix's strengths position it to capitalise on opportunities and navigate market threats for sustained growth.

Netflix's Strengths

As a crucial aspect of the SWOT analysis, a company's strength serves as a valuable asset for strategic expansion. Netflix, positioned as a leading streaming service, boasts several strengths contributing to its success. The company has established a robust brand reputation, becoming synonymous with top-tier television programmes and experiencing remarkable growth. With a global presence that is economically accessible to many Southeast Asian countries, Netflix gains a competitive edge in the ever-evolving market. Furthermore, the platform's original content, including movies and TV shows, not only provides opportunities for emerging filmmakers but also resonates with the audience due to its unique presentation. Netflix's adaptability, evidenced by continuous service modifications aligned with market trends and viewer preferences, further solidifies its current high demand.

Netflix's Weaknesses

While most companies deal with a combination of strengths and weaknesses, it is crucial to formulate strategies to address the latter. Despite Netflix's standing as a top company, a notable weakness impedes its growth. This includes limited copyright, negatively impacting revenue, and being compounded by increasing debts. Additionally, the lack of original content in certain countries results in lower demand for high-priced subscriptions. Dependency on the North American customer base poses another challenge, and the absence of proficient customer care executives hampers service quality, leading to a decline in customer satisfaction.

Netflix's Opportunities

The evolving market dynamics and increasing demands present lucrative growth opportunities for companies, particularly in the rapidly expanding Over-the-Top (OTT) platform industry. Netflix, with its strong brand reputation, is well-positioned to capitalise on the growing demand for OTT services. The company's foray into exclusive content creation provides a pathway for diversification, potentially expanding into additional product lines such as video games and comic books. Leveraging its global presence, Netflix can bolster its subscriber base through strategic partnerships with local markets, enabling penetration into specific regions. Moreover, the rejection of traditional advertising-based models opens up an opportunity for Netflix to prioritise superior customer service and explore innovative concepts that surpass competitors in the OTT landscape.

Netflix's Threats

In the competitive market landscape, companies face specific threats, particularly in the realm of Over-the-Top (OTT) services. To secure their standing as the best, excelling in various parameters becomes crucial. However, even with such excellence, companies, including industry giant Netflix, encounter challenges in their expansion endeavours. Netflix contends with several risks and threats, including the impact of COVID-19 on the production of original content, government regulations limiting expansion in certain countries, the pervasive issue of content piracy undermining revenue, and the shared account practice reducing the customer base. Addressing and navigating these challenges are imperative for sustaining success in the dynamic OTT market.

Source: <https://www.edrawmax.com/article/netflix-swot-analysis.html>

QUESTIONS

1. What are key factors contributing to Netflix's success as a leading streaming service, based on the SWOT analysis?
(**Hint:** Brand reputation, global presence, original content, and adaptability in the dynamic market.)
2. How does Netflix navigate and address challenges in the Over-the-Top (OTT) market, including threats like content piracy and shared accounts?
(**Hint:** Netflix's strategies in response to risks such as COVID-19 impacts, government regulations, and maintaining customer satisfaction.)

2.9 EXERCISE

1. What is environmental scanning?
2. What is the importance of environmental scanning?
3. What is business environment analysis?
4. State different steps in business environment analysis.
5. What is SWOT analysis?
6. What is risk assessment?

2.10 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Meaning and Importance of Environmental scanning	1.	Scanning
Business Environment Analysis	2.	Scanning
	3.	Assessing
	4.	Strategic Advantages Profile
	5.	Environmental Threat and Opportunity Profile

NOTES

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
SWOT Analysis	6.	d. A business can have a high demands of its products in the coming future.
	7.	b. A business has a good labour force.
Assessing Risk in a Business Environment	8.	Risk
	9.	strategic

2.11 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- *Organisations and the Business Environment*, written by David Campbell and Tom Craig. https://books.google.co.in/books?id=h-FHr6ExlQUC&printsec=frontcover&dq=business+environment+analysis&hl=en&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwiAnaO_iKjhAhXMbn0KHQZDD4QQ6AEINTAC#v=onepage&q=business%20environment%20analysis&f=false
- *SWOT Analysis*, written by Alan Sarsby, published by Leadership Library <https://books.google.co.in/books?id=Yrp3DQAAQBAJ&printsec=frontcover&dq=swot+analysis&hl=en&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwjltvYiajhAhWJSH0KHaaXDHwQ6AEIKjAA#v=onepage&q=swot%20analysis&f=false>

E-REFERENCES

- Environmental Analysis Process - Explanation. (2019). Retrieved from <http://bbaassignment.blogspot.com/2013/09/explain-process-of-environmental.html>
- Environmental Analysis and Diagnosis: Process, Types and Techniques. (2019). Retrieved from <http://www.businessmanagementideas.com/management/environmental-analysis/environmental-analysis-and-diagnosis-process-types-and-techniques/18561>

Micro Business Environment

Table of Contents

- 3.1 Introduction**
- 3.2 Concept of Micro Business Environment**
 - 3.2.1 Significance of Micro Business Environment
 - 3.2.2 Constituents of Micro Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 3.3 Meaning of Organisation Appraisal**
 - 3.3.1 Organisational Appraisal Methods
 - 3.3.2 Sources of Information Collection for Organisation Appraisal
 - 3.3.3 Informational Appraisal Approaches
 - 3.3.4 Factors Affecting Organisational Appraisal Approach
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 3.4 Summary**
- 3.5 Key Words**
- 3.6 Case Study**
- 3.7 Exercise**
- 3.8 Answers for Self Assessment Questions**
- 3.9 Suggested Books and e-References**

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe the micro business environment and its importance
- Describe the various elements of micro business environment
- Explain the meaning of organisation appraisal
- Discuss various methods of organisational appraisal
- Describe the various sources of information collection for organisation appraisal
- Discuss the informational appraisal approaches
- Explain the factors affecting organisational appraisal approach

3.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you had studied the meaning and importance of environmental scanning. You had also studied about business environment analysis and its steps, SWOT analysis and assessment of risk in business environment.

Every business functions in its own unique and special environment. This environment encompasses certain factors which impact the operations and functioning of the business. Therefore, businesses cannot operate on their own without external forces which are outside its periphery. An environment of business includes all such forces and factors which influence the strategies, decisions, and actions of the business. In other words, the environment determines the success of a business. So, all businesses must identify, evaluate, appraise, and respond to every opportunity and threat in their environments. Thus, in order to survive and grow, a business must continuously keep an eye on its environment and adjust itself accordingly.

According to **Glueck and Jauch**, *the environment includes factors outside the firm which can lead to opportunities for or threats to the firm. Although there are many factors, the most important of the factors are socio-economic, technological, suppliers, competitors and government.*

According to **Barry M. Richman and Melvyn Copen**, *environmental factors or constraints are largely, if not totally, external and beyond the control of individual industrial enterprises and their managements. These are essentially the 'givers' within which firms and their managements must operate in a specific country and they vary, often greatly, from country to country.*

In the present scenario, both external and internal forces which impact the business decisions and policies are regarded as integral elements of the business environment.

In this chapter, you will study about micro business environment, its significance and constituents. You will also study about organisation appraisal, its various methods, and informational appraisal approaches and factors affecting organisational appraisal approach.

3.2 CONCEPT OF MICRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Micro business environment refers to the factors that have a direct influence on company's overall performance. In other words, the most immediate environment of the company is constituted by these factors. These factors encompass public, consumers, marketing intermediaries, competitors, suppliers, the general public, and shareholders. These factors are influenced by the macro business elements of the environment.

In contrast to the macro factors, the micro environmental business factors are more intricately associated with the company. Different industries are influenced by the micro factors in different ways. Thus, an organisation might take into consideration the micro factors which are related to a specific business activity. For example, the micro business environment of a restaurant might be its manpower, raw material suppliers, customers, other restaurants, etc.

3.2.1 SIGNIFICANCE OF MICRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Micro environment can be considered the first pillar for setting up an organisation. Components of micro environment are utilised to carry out all the marketing plans, strategies, and objectives. It is, hence, the executive wing of business in which practical execution of concepts, thoughts, and ideas are performed. By depending on the responses of these constituents, a business either moves in a forward direction or may move back.

Moreover, it guides and directs future promotion and communication policies of an organisation. With all of these characteristics, micro environment of an organisation plays a crucial role in identifying the current potential and assessing the organisation's future.

Micro environment encompasses factors of availability and usage of resources that affect businesses and individuals. A manager or executive of an organisation should have knowledge of the core microeconomic factors that influence the business. This will not only assist in planning and preparation but also in the long-term development of business strategy.

3.2.2 CONSTITUENTS OF MICRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Various constituents of micro business environment are as follows:

- **Customers:** Customers are vital elements of a business environment. The primary motive of a business is to gain the attention of customers in order to retain them. This helps the organisation acquire profitability and long-term survival. Therefore, business enterprises must carefully identify and analyse the needs and wants of their customers and fulfil them in an effective manner in order to gain loyal customers. The interest of customers cannot be neglected by any business as this might cause adverse effects on business. So, business organisations, must make changes in their products and services as per the changing tastes and preferences of customers. Hence, customers prove to be the central focus of a business environment.

- **Suppliers:** The business strategy gets influenced by the actions of suppliers, as they provide the raw materials for the process of production. For example, the production time and the sales will be affected due to the delayed production process if the services of the suppliers are not timely and reasonable.
- **Marketing intermediaries:** A company channels and distributes its products from the manufacturing units to the market and customers with the help of dealers and distributors. Marketing intermediaries represent the company. They play an active role in delivering and distributing the products to the end user. They also ensure that products and inventories are adequately available in stores, retails, or other access points. This is essential for business organisations and their success. For example, consumers can buy a household item from the nearest retail shop or outlet. They can also buy items from shopping malls, supermarkets, or purchase stuff online. Hence, it becomes the primary responsibility of the management to make sure that the products and items are adequately available in all their stores and outlets so that customers do not have to go home empty-handed and purchase the product that they need.
- **Competitors:** Competitors of a firm or company can have a direct influence on the strategies of the business. The organisation must possess the knowledge of performing a competitive analysis and gain an advantage over its competitors thereafter. Hence, the Unique Selling Point (USP) of the competitors as well as the value-added services offered by them must be known to the organisation. The organisation should also know how to differentiate itself from its competitors. The focus of the company should be to offer value and something which the competitors do not offer.
- **General public:** Companies must pay attention to a very vital component of micro environment, i.e., the general public, for its long-term survival. However, all the customers of a particular region would not purchase the company's product, but the existence of the company in that region will be dependent on how the people perceive the product, the company's image, or brand. For example, free sample products are offered by companies, and they also organise and arrange press releases, media, and seminars, and so on. Organisations also engage themselves in community development, environment, and public service programmes by developing sanitation units, etc. This helps the organisations acquire goodwill and gain the trust and faith of their customers as well as the general public, including social groups, consumer protection activists, media, environmentalists, etc.
- **Employees:** An organisation can attain its objectives and goals with the help of skilled employees. This is because employees who are experienced and skilled possess the necessary expertise to assist the organisation in achieving success. Such employees are developed through timely and regular training and development programmes and sessions. These programmes and sessions help in attaining the goals and objectives of the organisation efficiently and effectively.
- **Shareholders:** Shareholders are not just investors who invest in the company. In a way, they are the actual owners of the company since they own the shares of the company. This implies that shareholders have a right to know about the activities and operations of the company. A return on investment will also be demanded

by the shareholders. Hence, it is the responsibility of the organisation to generate profits and distribute them among the shareholders. Wealth for the shareholders has to be created by the organisation. Regular and timely dividends will also have to be paid to maintain their interest. Therefore, the perfect balance between the benefits to the shareholders and the health of the company have to be determined by the organisation.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following is an important constituent of micro business environment?
 - a. Customers
 - b. Employees
 - c. Shareholders
 - d. All of these
2. Which micro business element provides raw materials for the process of production?
 - a. General public
 - b. Suppliers
 - c. Competitors
 - d. Marketing intermediaries

3.3 MEANING OF ORGANISATION APPRAISAL

Organisation appraisal or internal analysis is normally performed to resolve a problem or an issue within the organisation, or to manage an emergency within the organisation. For example, poor maintenance of production machinery and equipment results in defects in the finished products. This problem can be solved with proper maintenance and servicing of the machinery and equipment. Analysis of internal business condition is also important for designing an appropriate strategy. Organisation appraisal is performed by strategic decision makers in order to get a practical outlook on the company profile, which, in turn, provides a clear explanation of the strengths and weaknesses of the company.

3.3.1 ORGANISATIONAL APPRAISAL METHODS

Strategists should remember to select only those techniques that match the needs of organisation from every aspect during the process of analysing the environment. Among the several methods for organisational appraisal, some of the important methods are given as follows:

- **Value chain analysis:** Under the resource analysis or value chain approach, physical quantities are transformed into monetary units. This analysis is performed in order to evaluate the amount of resources that are utilised for the economic objective and have emerged from various likely actions. It is the resource analyst's responsibility to evaluate not only the economic cost but also ensure that the manpower and

resources utilised are important for the process and are needed at that particular period of time. Besides this, resource analysis is also helpful in assessing the strengths and weaknesses of the organisation. This assists the organisation in devising strategies for enhancing its strengths and overcoming its weaknesses.

All business processes are a combination of several allied activities, starting from the inception of a concept of product to sales and service associated with the product offering. At every stage of this chain of activities, value is added to the offering of the company, making it better than earlier stages. This chain of activities is known as 'value chain'. Value chain is a related series of activities which creates or adds value to the organisation. Basically, a company's value chain consists of two major processes known as primary activities and the relevant support or secondary activities. The primary activities are those activities which emphasise on generating values for its customers, and the relevant support activities help and improve the performance of primary activities.

- **Balanced scorecard:** Balanced scorecard was introduced by **Robert Kaplan** and **David Norton** in the early 19th century as a method of evaluating the performance. It helps assess the performance of the organisation from various viewpoints. The reason behind such views is that managers are greatly identifying the need for assessing other aspects of organisational performance for measuring their value-creating activities. Lately, the balanced scorecard has adopted a new approach. According to this approach, it is a broad mechanism for evaluating the performance which provides a balance between non-conventional operational methods and financial methods. In the last few years, balance scorecard has managed to establish itself as the best approach for strategic control. It serves as a basis for the firms to validate the financial and strategic controls, they have launched for their performance evaluation. It is regarded as the most appropriate for business-level strategies and is also applicable to corporate-level strategies.
- **Historical analysis:** Historical analysis assists in removing several issues associated with the rules of the industry as it examines the ratio and changes brought in the organisation over a time period (in case there is an absence of chief strategic shift in the industry, and the organisation has not entered into a new industry). It helps in resolving the issues related to ratio calculation in several ways. The drawback involved in computing the historical ratio is that there is no external validation. For example, a company might have kept its account receivable collection period to 90 days for many years and has considered it suitable, if there is no external validation that other organisations have boosted it up to a period of 30 days. Historical analysis offers a way to compare the firm's performance and assists in identifying its strengths and weaknesses over the years. It serves as an important tool to study the rise or fall in the organisation's performance, depending on its earlier performance records. It is a standard presentation of the balance sheet involved in designing the description of profit and loss in the organisation's annual report. Those areas which have regularly shown progress depict the strengths and vice versa. It is possible to correctly evaluate the constant progress in the firm with the help of historical analysis.
- **Benchmarking:** One of the biggest ways to identify the assets and competencies of the organisation is to compare it with the current or present (or potential) rivals

and competitors. Various organisations existing in the similar industry generally have diverse marketing skills, integrity, managerial ability, brand images, technical expertise, operating sites and services, financial assets, etc. These different and diverse internal resources can become the relative strengths (or weaknesses) of the organisation depending upon the strategy that it chooses. While choosing a strategy, managers need to emphasise comparing the important internal resources of the organisation with those of the rivals or competitors, thus segregating its own major strengths and weaknesses. Benchmarking is the process by which encompasses comparing the performance standards and business processes of an organisation with those which are the best practices in the same industry or are the best standards in other industries. Generally, the aspects which are evaluated are cost, quality, and time. With the help of the benchmarking process, the organisation is able to recognise the best performing organisations in the same industry, or those with similar procedures in other industries, and can compare their (target firm) outcomes and processes with those of its own. Thus, this allows them to determine the reasons behind the good performance of the target firms and major secrets behind their success.

- **Key factor rating:** Key factor rating is performed on the basis of carefully studying the important factors which might influence the performance (marketing, financial, operations, and human resource capabilities) and assessing the whole competence of the organisation on the basis of the data gathered. The important factors which influence the organisation's functioning are taken into consideration under this method. A number of discussions, sequential meetings, and surveys assist in collecting information about the important factors. With a perspective to rate the important factors, answers to questions in all the areas of function are examined carefully. Mathematical models are used to study the relative effect of all the factors (conductive or not conducive) on a particular result. Some of the basic questions which a strategist can use as a guide are related to the vital elements of the internal environment. The information which was gathered by the key factor rating can assist the strategist to draw brief estimation and conclusion about the situation of the internal environment of the organisation.
- **Industry standards:** Industry standards are popularly accepted to calculate the value of the financial ratios of the organisation, yet sometimes they might be misleading. Normally, several matters are taken into consideration while making use of industry standards. Firstly, the organisation which is being analysed is, in reality, actual member of the industry for which the standards are devised. For example, a lot of work has been done to formulate the industrial standards for the educational institutions, yet in the category of educational institutions, there are several sub-categories, like private, government, medical, rural, urban, engineering, aided, etc. For example, for the purpose of offering grants/aids or regulation, there is a possibility that the standards of one institute are different from that of another institute. As the information offered usually by the publication is the major source of industrial standards, it is very significant to utilise that ratio for the industry which is being analysed, and industrial standards are computed in somewhat similar ways. Some ratios are computed by only a single method without any issue, while others can be computed by various legitimate methods, which might result in certain variations in the outcomes.

3.3.2 SOURCES OF INFORMATION COLLECTION FOR ORGANISATION APPRAISAL

The information sources for organisation appraisals can be in written format or verbal. The collection of sources depends on the firm's information capability. Sources of information may be classified as internal or external. Internal data is collected from within the organisation to make decisions for effective operations and processes. This information is crucial to find out whether the strategies that the organisation is presently following are effective, or if changes or modifications should be made. The internal sources of information include:

- **Accounting resources:** A vast amount of internal information is offered by the accounting resources. A marketing researcher can make use of such information.
- **Sales force report:** Information pertaining to the sales of the product is offered by the sales force report.
- **Internal experts:** The heads of various departments of an organisation are the internal experts. These individuals can give insights regarding the way a particular task or an activity should be performed.
- **Miscellaneous reports:** Diverse internal reports provide varied information for organisational decision-making and analysis.

The external sources of information are primarily required when a firm attempts to perform a comparative analysis.

These sources include:

- **Government publications:** A vast amount of information is provided by the government sources. However, many internet websites also contain such information. Data is generated by a variety of government agencies. They are:
 - **Registrar General of India:** Demographic data is generated by this government body. Data covers details regarding gender, age, income, occupation, and so on.
 - **Central Statistical Organisation:** Statistics regarding national accounts are published by this governmental body. It encompasses details like growth rate, national income, and so on. The annual survey of industries is also published by this organisation.
 - **Director General of Commercial Intelligence:** The operations of this office are carried out from Kolkata. This body provides information on exports and imports, i.e., foreign trade, offered by this body.
 - **Ministry of Commerce and Industries:** Information regarding wholesale price index is offered by this ministry. It operates through the office of economic advisor. The statistics offered by this body pertain to various sectors, such as food, fuel, power, etc. The All India Consumer Price Index is also offered by this ministry.
 - **Planning Commission:** The basic statistics about the Indian economy is offered by the commission.

- **Reserve Bank of India:** Data regarding savings and investments is offered by the RBI. Various financial reports and currency are also furnished by the RBI.
 - **Labour Bureau:** Data regarding employment and jobs is offered by this bureau.
 - **National Sample Survey:** Ministry of Planning carries out the National Sample Survey. Through this survey, statistics regarding demographics, agriculture, economy, society, etc., is acquired.
 - **Department of Economic Affairs:** Data pertaining to income, consumption, expenses, investments, and foreign trade are provided by this department.
 - **State Statistical Abstract:** Data regarding activities of the state, such as education, occupation, etc., is offered by this body.
- **Non-government publications:** Publications of various trade and industry associations come under this body. It includes:
- Various mills, such as textile mills, woollen mills, etc.
 - Small Industries Development Board of India
 - Confederation of Indian Industry (CII)
 - Export Promotion Council
 - Several press media associations
 - Several chambers of commerce
 - The Indian Cotton Mill Association
 - The Bombay Stock Exchange
- **Syndicate services:** Some organisations offer these services. Such organisations collect and tabulate information regarding marketing on a regular basis. They do so for their clients who are subscribers to such syndicate services. Therefore, the information which is appropriate for the subscriber is offered under the syndicate services. Information regarding households as well as institutions is offered under such services. Three techniques of data collection are utilised for collecting data from households, viz., survey, electronic scanner services, and mail diary panel.

3.3.3 | INFORMATIONAL APPRAISAL APPROACHES

Various approaches regarding organisational appraisal are given as follows:

- **Systematic approach:** Under the systematic approach, information regarding organisational appraisal is gathered in a systematic manner. A wide variety of information pertaining to the policy statements of the government regarding the firm's industry and business, target customers and markets, amendments in regulations and laws which influence the activities of the firm directly can be easily gathered. However, it becomes essential to regularly update such information for operational tasks as well as strategic management.
- **Ad hoc approach:** Under this approach, various special surveys, researches, and studies can be carried out by an organisation for the purpose of handling the diverse issues of the environment every now and then. These researches and surveys can

be carried out on occasions when the firm needs to take up any special project, formulate new strategies or measure the effectiveness of the current strategy. Any alterations or unanticipated turns of events can be looked into regarding their influence on the firm.

- **Processed form approach:** Processed information, available from within and outside the firm, can be utilised by any firm if it wants to follow this approach. Information provided by several private agencies or government bodies is a form of processed secondary data which can also be used by firms and companies.

3.3.4 | FACTORS AFFECTING ORGANISATIONAL APPRAISAL APPROACH

Organisational appraisal is affected by the following factors:

- **Ability of strategists:** This refers to the skill and expertise of the strategist to assess the influences and forces influencing the firm.
- **Organisational size:** The size of the organisation influences the quality of appraisal in the organisation. Smaller organisations are easier to analyse as compared to the larger ones.
- **Traits of internal environment:** This encompasses the characteristics of people, teams, and organisational politics. The appraisal process may suffer if there is no co-ordination exists between the teams. Hence, at last, it can be said that the appraisal of the organisation is essential for the organisation's growth.
- **Satisfaction with success:** At times, successful firms become satisfied with their success and are not able to improve their performance further and, hence, neglect the process of appraisal.
- **Lack of strategic planning:** Certain firms are not able to think in a strategic manner and, hence, fail to focus on important constituents of the external and internal environment. Planning is considered a routine or regular activity in such firms. Every organisation should have an overall view of its complete environment and appraise it in an effective manner in order to identify the factors affecting it either in a negative or positive manner.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. Which of the following is an internal information source for organisation appraisal?
 - a. Government publications
 - b. Syndicate services
 - c. Salesforce reports
 - d. Non-government publications
4. Which is an organisational appraisal method?
 - a. Industry standards
 - b. Balanced scorecard
 - c. Benchmarking
 - d. All of these

3.4 SUMMARY

NOTES

- Micro environment refers to the factors which directly influence the performance of the company.
- Micro environment plays a very crucial role in identifying the true potential of the organisation and deciding its future course of action and strategies.
- Components of micro business environment include customers, suppliers, competitors, marketing intermediaries, the general public, employees, and shareholders.
- Organisation appraisal or internal analysis is performed to obtain a practical view of the company profile, which, in turn, provides a clear description of the strengths and weaknesses of the firm.
- Some methods of organisational appraisal include benchmarking, key factor rating, balanced scorecard, industry standards, etc.
- Sources of information collection for organisation appraisal include internal as well as external sources of data.

3.5 KEY WORDS

- **Ad hoc approach:** An approach that is developed for a particular or single use. It is the exact opposite of a systematic approach, which can be generalised and adopted in various scenarios.
- **Benchmarking:** A systematic process of comparison of the organisational processes and performances with those of the best organisations in the industry to create new standards or to improve processes.
- **Micro business environment:** An environment comprised of various micro factors that affect the business strategy, decision-making, and performance of an organisation.
- **Value chain analysis:** A strategic tool used by organisations to evaluate their internal activities.

3.6 CASE STUDY: COCA-COLA'S MICRO ENVIRONMENT

The marketing department of Coca-Cola develops core strategies for the company brands to make sure that all communication is consistent in all the markets. With a combined effort, the Coca-Cola system attempts to maximise its resources for profitable growth and market leadership. The marketing departments are responsible for product's advertisement, marketing and promotion. If all these departments perform their duty effectively, then the objectives of the Coca-Cola Company will be met. Coca-Cola agreed to swap some brands and buy a 17% stake in Monster Beverage Corp. for about \$2.15 billion, increasing its bet on the rapid growth of the energy-drink market. Under the agreement, the two companies will share their production, marketing, and distribution.

Marketing intermediaries aid the company in promoting, selling, and distributing its goods to the end customers. Intermediaries encompass marketing agencies,

NOTES

distribution firms and resellers. For example, in a deal, Coke joined hands with a US-based company, Wendy, to provide Coke to all the fast food chains located in the US. In this case, Wendy is an important example of an intermediary for Coke.

Suppliers offer the raw materials and resources that are required by the firms to produce goods and services. For example, bottling partners is a company-owned entity, namely Hindustan Coca-Cola Beverages Ltd. Suppliers always play a crucial role in the operations of every firm.

Customers of Coke differ massively in terms of age. From kids to youngsters, youngsters to elders and elders to older people, Coke has always captured high customer attention for decades. For example, with the help of a market survey, Coke finds that one million people in the US drink Coke with breakfast every single day. This is how Coke has been favourite drink of customers for centuries. Recent survey shows that Coke is the only product in the world of which more than 85% of the population is well aware. All companies have to keep an updated study of their customers. In the case of Coke, the company has always maintained excellent customer retention.

Coca-Cola's annual Stakeholder Panel is particularly insightful, with members of the Panel drawn from NGOs, academia, investors, trade associations, suppliers, and other technical experts. The Panel's scope is to identify emerging risks and opportunities, and to encourage companies to demonstrate ever-greater leadership and innovation.

Source: <https://www.slideshare.net/TannuBhatnagar/marketing-management-38228513>

QUESTIONS

1. What are the micro business environment components of Cola-Cola, as in the case mentioned above?

(Hint: Marketing intermediaries, suppliers, customers, and stakeholders.)

2. How has Coca-Cola maintained its customer base?

(Hint: Coke finds through a market survey that one million of the US population drinks coke with breakfast everyday. This is how coke has been a favourite drink of customers for centuries.)

3.7 EXERCISE

1. Write a detailed note on micro business environment and its significance.
2. What are the various constituents of micro business environment?
3. What do you mean by organisation appraisal? Also, state various organisational appraisal approaches.
4. Explain the factors affecting organisational appraisal.
5. Discuss various methods of organisational appraisal in detail.

6. Give a description of the sources of information collection for the organisation appraisal.
7. Write short notes on the following terms:
 - i. Value chain analysis
 - ii. Benchmarking
 - iii. Balanced scorecard
 - iv. Key factor rating
 - v. Processed form approach
 - vi. Ad hoc approach
 - vii. Systematic approach
 - viii. Syndicate services

3.8 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Concept of Micro Business Environment	1.	d. All of these
	2.	b. Suppliers
Meaning of Organisation Appraisal	3.	c. Salesforce reports
	4.	d. All of these

3.9 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Jauch, L., Glueck, W., & McGraw-Hill Int. Ed. Management Series. (1989). *Strategic Management and Business Policy*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Kazmi, A. (2009). *Strategic Management and Business Policy*. New Delhi: Tata McGraw Hill.

E-REFERENCES

- Bhasin, H. (2019). What is Micro Environment? Role and Factors of Micro Environment. Retrieved from <https://www.marketing91.com/what-is-micro-environment-in-business/#Role-of-Micro-Environment-in-Business>
- Approaches and Techniques Used for Environmental Scanning. Retrieved from <http://www.yourarticlelibrary.com/environment/approaches-and-techniques-used-for-environmental-scanning/23556>
- Significance of Micro Business Environment. Retrieved from <https://www.marketing91.com/what-is-micro-environment-in-business/#Role-of-Micro-Environment-in-Business>

112222

Macro Business Environment

Table of Contents

- 4.1 Introduction
- 4.2 Concept of Macro Business Environment
 - 4.2.1 Significance of Macro Business Environment
 - 4.2.2 Constituents of Macro Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 4.3 Factors Affecting Macro Business Environment
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 4.4 Summary
- 4.5 Key Words
- 4.6 Case Study
- 4.7 Exercise
- 4.8 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 4.9 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe the concept of macro business environment
- Explain the significance of macro business environment
- Identify the constituents of macro business environment
- Identify the factors affecting the macro business environment

4.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you had studied the concept of the micro business environment. Its important constituents include employees, customers, markets, etc. You had also studied various methods of organisational appraisal and their importance.

Macro business environment consists of those factors which are beyond control. Some examples include the September 11 terrorist attacks, financial crisis in 2008-2009, the EU sovereign debt crisis of 2009-2011, and US-China trade war and the Brexit impact of 2019. The unpredictability of these factors makes them more threatening to businesses. These factors also trigger a chain of uncontrollable events which accentuate the damage. For example, concerned about the loss of manufacturing jobs, the Trump administration increased duties for the goods imported from China. This invoked a tit-for-tat response from China as it increased duties on US goods, particularly on politically impacting agricultural products. Positive impacts of the macro business environment also occur in the same manner. For example, as crude oil prices drop, the average consumer in India starts spending more on retail products due to more cash savings. The increased consumer spending on retail outlets increases demand for other consumer products.

In this chapter, you will study about the concept of macro business environment, its significance, constituents, as well as impacting factors.

4.2 CONCEPT OF MACRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

All organisations, whether big or small, are part of the business environment. The business environment surrounds them and forms the context in which they have to operate. Two major types of business environments are given as follows:

- **Macro business environment:** This is the general environment that affects the operations of all the business entities that operate in an economy. It affects its business enterprises indirectly and distantly.
- **Micro business environment:** This is the immediate environment in which a particular organisation operates. Thus, it only affects that organisation directly and regularly.

4.2.1 SIGNIFICANCE OF MACRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

No business organisation functions in a vacuum. It makes decisions within an environment of customers, competitors, suppliers, distributors, political factors,

social framework and legislation. Managers can easily control some of these environmental factors, whereas others cannot be controlled. Therefore, they must accommodate these uncontrollable factors in their decision-making process.

Significance of Macro Business Environment on Family Businesses in India

In 1947, when India became independent, almost all private businesses were family-owned. Some business houses, such as the Tatas, the Birlas, the Mafatlals and the Walchands were major players. Post independence, the Indian economy observed significant developments and changes in the macro business environment, including high tariff rates, import restriction, foreign exchange regulation, creation of public sector monopolies, and nationalisation of banking and insurance sectors. Despite these restrictions and regulations, family-owned businesses in India continued to retain a majority control on the private business sector.

In 1990, the government was compelled to liberalise the Indian economy due to the balance of payments crisis. A large scale of economic reforms transformed the structure, operations, investment and competitiveness of businesses in India. Several sectors, which were reserved for public entities, opened up for private players. These included telecommunication, power generation and distribution, mining, and airlines. The rules and norms for the entry of foreign multinational companies to set up businesses in India were relaxed. This resulted in growth in the Indian economy. In 10 years, the GDP growth rate increased from 5.6% (in 1990) to 7.4% (in 2000) as shown in Table 1:

TABLE 1: India's GDP Growth Rate from 1990 to 2015 (%)

	1950-80	1981-90	1991-2000	2001-10	2011-15
GDP growth	3.5	5.6	6.2	7.4	6.7

Source: 1950-2000: Das, Gurucharan. [2007]. "India: How a rich nation become poor and will be rich again", <https://grucharandas.org/rich-nation-poor>, accessed on April 10, 2017; 2001-2015: Data Source- World Development Indicators, <http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/NY.GDP.MKTP.KD.ZG?contextual=default&end=2015&locations=IN&start=1961&view=chart>, accessed on April 10, 2017, averages calculated by the authors.

While business houses, such as Tatas, Birlas, Ambanis (Reliance), Bajajs and Mahindras were able to reinvent themselves, other major players, such as Thapars, Mafatlals, Shrirams (DCM) and Shahs (Mukund) sank. New business houses, such as Adanis, Dr. Reddy's, Mittals (Bharti), and Shangvis (Sun Pharma) emerged. *Thirty years after liberalisation, many business houses are newly facing existential crisis in the digital economy.*

4.2.2 | CONSTITUENTS OF MACRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

The macro environment consists of political, economic, socio-cultural, technological, legal and environmental factors. These factors can be easily remembered as PESTLE. Let us discuss these factors in detail:

- **Political and legal environment:** All business organisations are affected by the political forces shaping the country. These forces determine the laws and regulations within which businesses have to operate. Therefore, managers must

analyse the major political and legal forces influencing their market, organisation and industry. Some examples of political forces are:

- **Patent legislation:** Intellectual property, patent and copyright laws have significant influence in high-tech industries and pharmaceuticals. Governments establish the rules about what may or may not be patented. The patent (and copyright) laws are often a matter of high-profile litigation and settlement.
- **Taxation:** Governments impose general tax as well as selective tax on companies' specific products to manage demand and raise revenue. For example, many state governments in India have a high tax on tobacco and liquors.
- **Safety regulations:** Governments expect products to conform to specified safety regulations.
- **Labour law:** Governments set and change labour laws after ratification from the Parliament. Different countries have different labour laws. In India, the labour laws are quite restrictive, whereas the US has relaxed labour laws.
- **Consumer protection law:** Governments enact laws to protect consumers. For example, the government introduced the Real Estate Regulatory Authority (RERA) Act in 2013 to protect home-buyers and boost investments in the real estate sector.
- **Bankruptcy law:** In 2016, the Indian government introduced the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code (IBC) to create a single law for insolvency and bankruptcy of businesses. Since then, there has been a significant rise of cases in the IBC Code.

A change in the central or local government can make substantial changes in the law policy. For example, left-wing governments in India [such as coalition governments formed with the support of Communist Party of India (CPI) or Communist Party of India (Marxist) (CPI (M))] traditionally increase the number of laws and regulations on businesses, whereas the right-wing governments (such as those formed by or in coalition with the Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP) tend to reduce restrictions on businesses. The laws are enforced by specialist bodies such as the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI).

In India, laws are created through three sources:

- Legislation from the Parliament
- Laws decided by the Supreme Court based on the Constitution of India
- Local laws passed by the state governments

The Supreme Court makes laws when a law is unclear and the judges need to clarify matters by referring to other cases.

- **Economic environment:** Most economies follow a cycle of growth for 7-8 years followed by a recession of 7-8 years. Companies have to carefully scrutinise the economic environment particularly in periods of recession. In recession, consumers are likely to delay the purchase of major items due to employment insecurity. By the same token, business organisations reduce their capital expenditure on new

factories or equipment. They will borrow less, as they are not confident about their ability to repay. All these factors will dampen the demand even further. In most cases, recession periods last for a few months to a year. However, in 2008, the mortgage sub-prime crisis created a worldwide recession in which many economies were able to recover only after about five years.

- **Socio-cultural environment:** This environment is made up of:
 - **Demographic forces:** These are the factors that determine the structure of a population, such as age, income distribution and ethnicity.
 - **Cultural forces:** These are the differences in beliefs, behaviours and customs among different people.
 - **Social responsibility and ethics:** These include the ethical beliefs of people as in how businesses should operate socially and ethically.
 - **Consumerism:** This is the tectonic shift from business organisations to consumers.

Figure 1 illustrates the relationship between these factors:

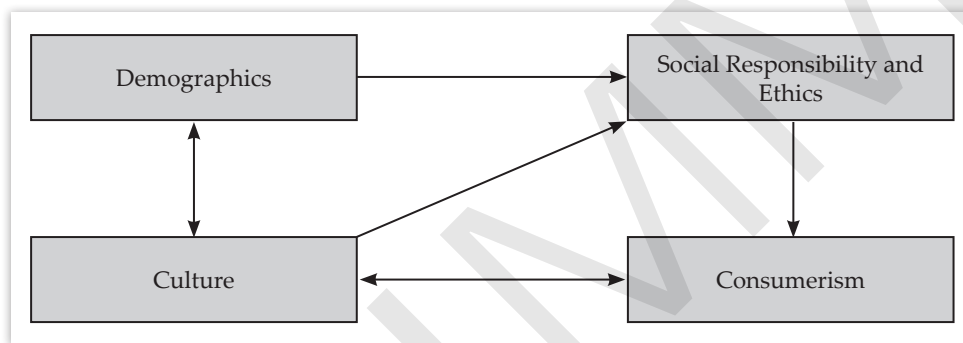


FIGURE 1: Socio-cultural Factors

Source: https://uk.sagepub.com/sites/default/files/upm-binaries/58888_blythe_pandp_chapter_2_the_marketing_environment.pdf

The socio-cultural environment determines the value system of a society. It includes factors such as:

- Purchase and consumption behaviour
- Ethical values and beliefs
- Literacy and education
- Consumer tastes and preferences
- Human relationships
- Language and norms in society
- Social customs and traditions
- Family structure
- Changing life style patterns

All these factors have far-reaching impacts on organisations, as they determine the work culture, labour mobility, etc. Even when people of different cultures use the same product, their consumption behaviour, conditions of use, purpose or perception of the product may differ. Some examples of different cultural perceptions of the same product/message/item are given as follows:

- While Vicks Vaporub ointment is used for cold and pain in India, it is used as a mosquito repellent in some tropical countries.
 - The slogan 'sticks like crazy' of 3Ms is translated as 'sticks foolishly' in Japanese.
 - Blue is a feminine and warm colour in Holland, but masculine and cold in Sweden.
 - Green is a preferred colour in the Muslim nations, but it represents illness in Malaysia.
 - Red is a popular colour in Russia, but it represents disaster in Africa.
 - White is the colour of death and mourning in China and Korea, but it is popularly used in bridal dress in the western countries, as it is a symbol of purity for them.
- **Technological environment:** To understand the impact of technological environment, read the story of Blackberry demise. The company went from owning 50% share of the smartphone market in 2007 to less than 1% in 2012. And, all this was because of its ignorance to the iPhone's mass appealing concepts, such as performance and ease of use. New technologies have a tremendous capacity to make and destroy businesses. Technological innovation is a pervasive factor that cannot be ignored. IT giants in India today are facing a severe reduction in profit margins because of artificial intelligence and automation. It has been predicted that in 20 years, thousands of jobs will cease to exist, as robots will be doing them. Business managers have to analyse technological developments and adapt their organisations accordingly. For example, robots may take over a lot of jobs today. However, there will also be new sorts of jobs that will be created for which skilled people will be needed.
- **Natural and global environment:** Ecological or natural forces, such as weather and climate, are relevant to business. For example, an umbrella might be a staple necessity in Mumbai, but it is not a requirement in the desert city of Dubai. The different types of marketing mix are prepared for different geographical conditions. For example, industries with high requirement of raw materials such as steel and cement plants are located near the raw material sources. Topological factors may also impact demand. For example, jeeps and Sports Utility Vehicles (SUVs) are in greater demand in hilly areas than sedans or hatchbacks. Recently, environmental factors have assumed tremendous importance due to rising pollution, global warming and changing weather patterns.

The global environment refers to factors that are relevant to the internal business environment. These factors include:

- World Trade Organization (WTO) agreements
- International conventions

- Business treaties among countries
- International agreements
- Rise in oil prices

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. The business environment can be divided into:
 - a. National and local environment
 - b. Macro and micro environment
 - c. Financial and non-financial environment
 - d. Domestic and international environment
2. Macro business environment is beyond the control of a business. (True/False)
3. The constituents of macro business environment are commonly known as _____.

4.3 FACTORS AFFECTING MACRO BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Although macro business environment trends are cyclic in nature, it is important to analyse them closely. Otherwise, businesses run the risk of finding themselves in the middle of a downward spiral caused due to an out-of-control factor. Therefore, managers should be aware of the global headwinds that may impact the economy of their country, workforce or industry, and take appropriate actions to adapt to them proactively.

Business environment of an organisation is managed by environment scanning. It is the process of collecting and using information about occasions, patterns, trends, and relationships within an organisation's micro and macro business environment. It helps to identify the threats and opportunities in the environment and formulate strategies accordingly. One approach of macro environment scanning is PESTLE analysis. There are various versions of PESTLE analysis. You can select any suitable version depending on your context. Some of the versions of PESTLE analysis are as follows:

- **PESTLE/PESTEL:** Analysis of political, economic, socio-cultural, technological, legal, environmental factors
- **PEST:** Analysis of political, economic, socio-cultural, and technological factors
- **PESTLIED:** Analysis of political, economic, socio-cultural, technological, legal, international, environmental, demographic factors
- **STEEPLE:** Analysis of social/demographic, technological, economic, environmental, political, legal, and ethical factors
- **SLEPT:** Analysis of socio-cultural, legal, economic, political, technological factors

- **LONGPESTLE:** Local, national and global versions of PESTLE (most suitable for environment scanning in multinational organisations)
- **PESTELI:** PESTEL + Industry analysis

The result of PESTLE analysis is to evaluate the 'big picture' surrounding an organisation and the potential of new markets. Doing business in markets under the influence of negative forces becomes quite difficult. Figure 2 illustrates the process of conducting PESTLE analysis:

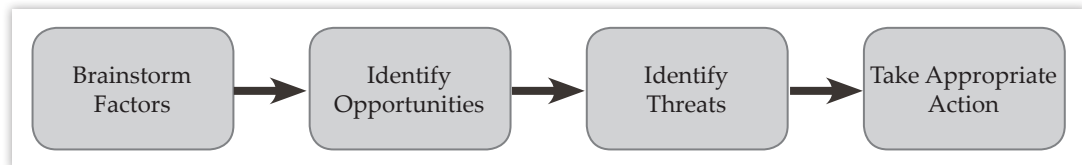


FIGURE 2: PESTLE Analysis

1. **Brainstorm factors:** Consider political, economic, socio-cultural, technological, legal and environment factors.
 - a. **Political factors:**
 - ✓ When are the next national or state elections? How could their results change the government policy?
 - ✓ Who is tipped to win elections? What are their views on business policies or any other policies that impact your organisation/industry?
 - ✓ How much established are the property rights?
 - ✓ What is the level of corruption and/or organised crime? What are the political steps to counter them?
 - ✓ How will business regulation and planned changes impact your organisation?
 - ✓ Is the political parties' trend toward more regulation or deregulation?
 - ✓ How does the government approach corporate policy, Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR), environment issues and consumer protection laws?
 - b. **Economic factors:**
 - ✓ What is the state of the current economy? Is it stable? Is it growing or declining?
 - ✓ What is the status of key exchange rates? Are they stable or fluctuating?
 - ✓ Is the customers' level of disposable income increasing or decreasing? What will be the trend in the next few years?
 - ✓ What is the rate of unemployment? Will it be easy to create jobs? Will there be sufficient skilled manpower?
 - ✓ Do businesses and individuals have easy access to credit?
 - ✓ What is the cash flow situation of businesses?
 - ✓ What are the impacts of globalisation or free trade economy?

Figure 3 displays Porter's Diamond model which is a useful tool to align organisation's strategy to the economic environment of the country.

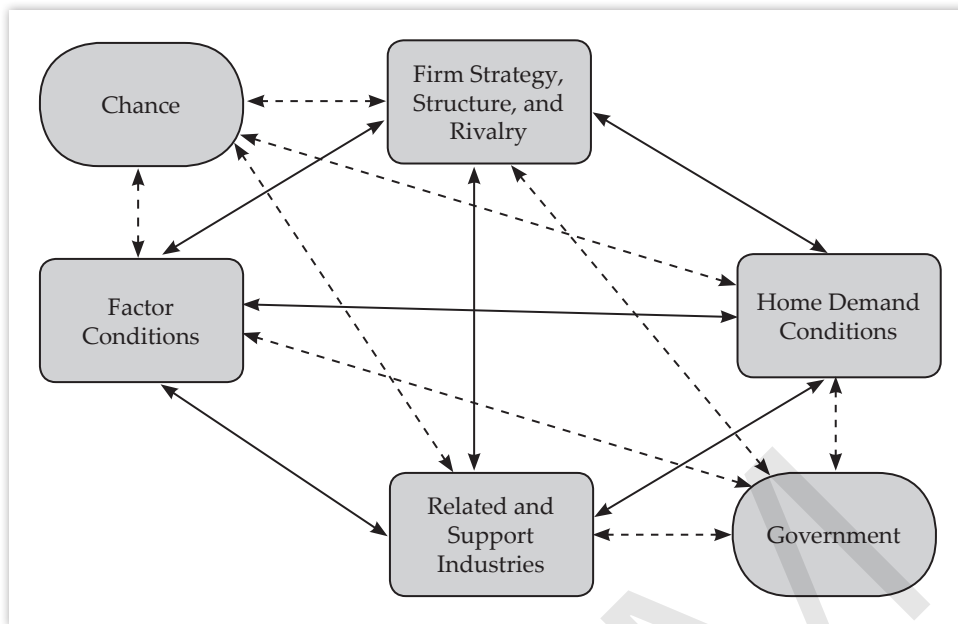


FIGURE 3: Porter's Diamond Model

Source: <https://www.toolshero.com/strategy/porter-diamond-model/>

Porter's Diamond model resembles a diamond. It offers a structure that can help a country to understand its competitive position internationally. Porter has introduced a new term called clusters, which are groups of interrelated organisations, suppliers, industries and institutions in a specific location. He suggested that the sustained competitive advantage of a country is an outcome of the following four inter-related factors and activities within these clusters:

1. **Firm strategy, structure, and rivalry:** Direct competition compels companies to increase productivity and innovation.
 2. **Home demand conditions:** The more the demand in an economy, the greater is the pressure for companies to innovate and improve competitiveness.
 3. **Related and support industries:** When the upstream and/or downstream industries are located in close proximity of an organisation, it leads to an unobstructed exchange of ideas and innovation.
 4. **Factor conditions:** Skilled labour, capital and infrastructure are the most important factors of production. If an organisation invests wisely in these factors of production, it leads to sustained competitive advantage.
- c. **Socio-cultural factors:**
- ✓ What is the age profile and growth rate of the population?
 - ✓ Will there be any generational shifts that may impact your business?
 - ✓ What is the level of health, education and social mobility in the society? How are these levels changing?

- ✓ What are the job market trends? What is the attitude of the population towards work?
- ✓ What social attitudes and customs can impact your business?
- ✓ What are the religious beliefs and lifestyle choices of the population?

To understand values in a society, you can use the following tools:

- ✓ **Competing values framework:** Figure 4 shows a framework developed by Robert Quinn and Kim Cameron, which is a useful tool to identify organisation's values.

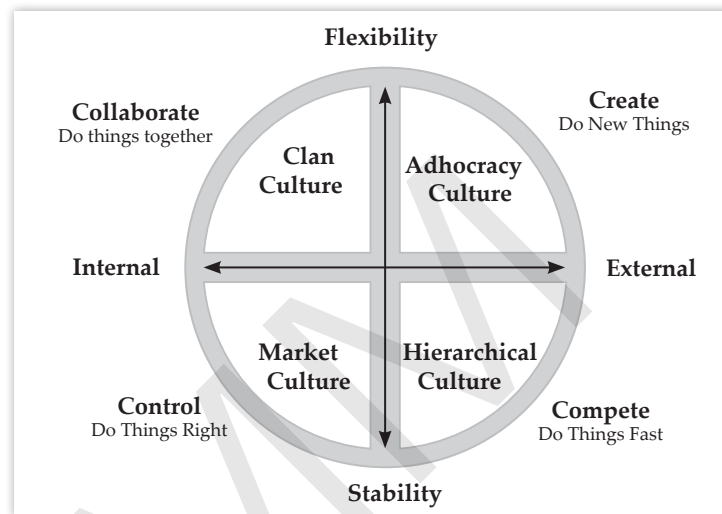


FIGURE 4: Competing Values Framework

Source: <https://www.toolshero.com/leadership/competing-values-framework/>

There are four corporate cultures given as follows:

- ◆ **Clan culture:** It is highly flexible and internally focussed. The company resembles a large family. The leaders are perceived as mentors or father figures. Loyalty, relationships, and morality are valued. Most start-ups or family businesses follow this culture.
- ◆ **Hierarchical culture:** These are formal, structured, controlling and internally focussed organisations. Government agencies are a typical example. Employees follow procedures religiously. All work processes are efficiently organised to manage control systems. Formal rules and policies are followed. The hierarchy is maintained. The focus is on reliable supply, tight deadlines, and low costs.
- ◆ **Market culture:** This culture focusses on results and achievement of objectives. It observes a high degree of control and is externally focussed. Competition and goal orientation are valued among employees. Examples of such organisations include banks and insurance companies. Outwardly, they profile themselves market leaders, but inside they are ruthless competitors.
- ◆ **Adhocracy culture:** These organisations focus on innovation. They are highly flexible and externally focussed. Marketing and advertising

agencies follow this culture. Employees are encouraged to achieve creative outcomes and are allowed considerable freedom to take risks.

- ✓ **Hofstede's cultural dimensions:** Hofstede proposed six dimensions to explain cultural differences among people:
 - ◆ **Power Distance Index (PDI):** This refers to the acceptable degree of inequality in a society. A high PDI means that people accept an unequal distribution of power, whereas a low PDI means that the power is shared in society. For example, Malaysia is a high PDI country where team members wait for the directions of their manager to start a task.
 - ◆ **Individualism vs. collectivism:** In an individual society, people take less responsibility for other individual's actions. In a collectivist society, people are loyal to their communities, and the community, in turn, will defend their interests. For example, Panama is a collectivist society. Businesses that focus on benefits to the community are valued.
 - ◆ **Masculinity vs. femininity:** In masculine societies, assertiveness and demonstration of success are valued. In feminine societies, modesty and good relationships are valued. For example, Japan is a highly masculine society where feelings of pride and ego are seen as status symbols. Money and achievement are valued over good relationships. On the other hand, Sweden is a feminine society, where there is more focus on the quality of life.
 - ◆ **Uncertainty Avoidance Index (UAI):** This refers to the ability of people to cope with anxiety. For example, Greece has a high UAI. People attempt to avoid uncertainty and try to make their life as predictable as possible. In Singapore (low UAI), people are more open to change or innovation.
 - ◆ **Long vs. short-term orientation:** Countries with a long-term orientation are practical, modest and economical. Countries with short-term orientation focus on principles, consistency, truth and religion/nationalism. For example, the US is a short-term orientation country, as people value short-term gains and quick results. They also have a strong sense of nationalism and social standards.
 - ◆ **Indulgence vs. restraint:** Countries that are high on indulgence promote individual drives and emotions, such as having fun. Countries that exhibit restraint focus on suppressing immediate gratification and have strict social norms to regulate people's conduct and behaviour. For example, Russia has a restrained culture.

d. **Technological factors:**

- ✓ What are the new technologies that the business should be using?
- ✓ Are there potentially any technologies being developed that could severely impact the business or industry?
- ✓ Does any competitor(s) have access to new, path-breaking technologies?

- ✓ What are the focussed areas of research among governments and educational institutions? How can you leverage them?
 - ✓ Does any technology require you to change infrastructure to adjust work patterns?
 - ✓ Can you leverage any existing technological hubs?
- e. **Legislative factors:**
- ✓ What are the employment laws in the country (such as minimum wage, benefits, etc.)?
 - ✓ What are the health and safety regulations that must be considered?
 - ✓ What are the environmental regulation laws of the land?
 - ✓ What data laws and copyright protection laws concern your business?
- f. **Environmental factors:**
- ✓ What sustainable environmental practices are applicable?
 - ✓ What is the status of ethical sourcing in the land? How can you adopt it for your business?
 - ✓ How can you reduce your carbon footprint in the business?
 - ✓ What data handling and user privacy practices can you incorporate in the business?
2. **Identify opportunities:** After identifying the relevant macro environment factors, identify the opportunities that these factors could open up for you. For example, you can analyse whether any of these factors enable you to develop new products or enter new markets or make processes more efficient.
3. **Identify threats:** You should also analyse which of these factors pose any threats. This will help you to forecast changes that could disrupt your business. For example, if a core customer base of your business is aging, then you should analyse whether you can open up to other demographics. If your product is under threat due to new technology on the horizon, then you can evaluate how you can leverage that technology to improve your product.
4. **Take action:** Finally, take suitable actions to exploit opportunities in your business plan, and manage or remove risks.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

4. Which of the following is not a political factor impacting the macro business environment?
- a. Change in the central government
 - b. Civil unrest
 - c. Threat of war
 - d. Cost of production

5. Which of the following elements is not a part of Porter's Diamond Model?
- Factor conditions
 - Firm strategy, structure and rivalry
 - Home demand conditions
 - Government

4.4 SUMMARY

- All organisations are part of the business environment.
- The business environment consists of a macro business environment and a micro business environment.
- Macro business environment is the general environment that affects the operations of all business entities in an economy. It cannot be controlled.
- Micro business environment is the immediate, specific environment in which an organisation operates. It can be controlled.
- The macro business environment consists of the political, economic, socio-cultural, technological, legal and natural environments.
- Business environment of an organisation is managed by environment scanning. It is the process of collecting and using information about occasions, patterns, trends and relationships within an organisation's micro and macro business environment.
- PESTLE analysis is used for macro environment scanning. It identifies the potential opportunities and threats arising from factors affecting the macro business environment.

4.5 KEY WORDS

- **Gross Domestic Product:** The value of all the goods and services produced in a country within a specific period of time.
- **Patent:** A government authority/license bestowing a right/title for a specified period.
- **Ethics:** Moral principles of an individual that suggest the concept of right and wrong.

4.6 CASE STUDY: APPLE PESTLE ANALYSIS

Apple is one of the world's most recognisable and prominent brands. Founded by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak, the company has introduced revolutionary products in personal computing and smartphones. Today, it is the world's largest mobile phone manufacturer with 1,23,000 employees (in 2017), with a revenue of \$215.49 billion (as of 2018). The company's CEO is Timothy Donald 'Tim' Cook. Its main competitors are Samsung, Google, Cisco, HP and Lenovo. The main products of the company are iPhone, iPod, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and iOS applications.

This case study conducts the PESTLE analysis to reveal the macro business environment factors that affect the company externally. The data is collected from various published sources and from Apple's case studies.

PESTLE Analysis of Apple

Political Factors

The larger revenue share of the company is from outside the US (\$113.8 billion) as compared to within the US (\$68.8 billion). Thus, the company's position is highly vulnerable to any political disturbance in these countries. Some political disturbances which affected Apple's business are as follows:

- **Suicide cases against Foxconn:** Foxconn, a Taiwanese company, is a major supplier of Apple. In May 2010, the company was held responsible for the suicide of two employees. Lawsuits were filed against the company for forcing employees to work for long hours. In another case, 16 workers were injured in an explosion in a supplier's facility.
- **Political turbulence in China:** Apple highly depends on the cheap labour of China. However, the political unrest in China, which erupts from time to time, may disrupt its manufacturing facilities.
- **Higher tariffs on China:** The Trump administration has imposed tariffs of \$250 billion on Chinese goods. China responded by imposing a tariff of \$110 billion on US goods. Although no tariffs are imposed on iPhones, there is a cause to worry as China may retaliate in ways that could harm Apple. The growing nationalism in China can also lead to reduced market share for its products in China.

Economic Factors

Due to its premium pricing policies, Apple is more vulnerable to recession and other economic crises. Some economic crises which affected Apple's growth are as follows:

- **Global recession:** Apple had a slow growth in 2013-14 due to the global recession, as shown in the following table A:

TABLE A: Decrease in Sales Growth Due to Global Recession

Country	2011-12	2012-13
US	50%	9%
Europe	31%	4%
China	78%	13%

- **Europe's economic troubles:** Europe's declining economy decreased revenue of Apple by 16% in 2012 (3rd quarter), as compared to 2011 Q3.
- **Inflation in the US:** Apple is particularly vulnerable to the rising inflation in the US, as it has large cash reserves.
- **Rising labour cost:** The rising labour cost in China is bad news for the company.
- **Strong Dollar:** The exchange rates are increasing due to increase in the value of the US dollar. The increased exchange rates impact Apple products, as the increased

difference between the US \$ and other currencies (e.g., Euro and Yuan) will make it more expensive for Apple to do business in Europe and China.

Socio-cultural Factors

Some of the socio-cultural factors which might affect Apple's operations are as follows:

- **High-status lifestyle:** Apple products are regarded as symbols of social status due to their premium prices.
- **Increased consumer spending in third-world countries:** In the coming years, Apple is likely to witness a growing market for its products in Africa and other third world countries.
- **Ethical concerns of manufacturing in China:** Some critics have pointed out the moral obligation of Apple to create job opportunities in the US as against manufacturing in China.
- **Brand acquisition:** To fulfil its customer's needs, Apple has made some major acquisitions and alliances with Sony, Motorola, Phillips, and AT&T. The social background of these brands affects Apple's operations.
- **Increased usage of smartphones:** The increasing popularity of mobile devices and social media will increase the demand for Apple devices.

Technological Factors

Apple has reinvented itself with time and thus, has the potential to keep growing as a major technology company. Some of the technological changes which Apple made in order to increase its business are as follows:

- **Advantage of 760 China Mobile Subscribers:** In 2013, Apple disclosed a deal with China Mobile to introduce iPhone to the Chinese market, which was dominated by low-cost Android smartphones. This deal gave Apple advantage to enter China in a major way through China Mobile's 760 subscribers. Under this deal, iPhone 5 and iPhone 5S were available at China Mobile and Apple retail stores in China.
- **Evaluating customers:** In 2015, Apple reportedly spent \$8.07 billion for R&D (3% of the company's net revenues) to evaluate the customer's mindset.
- **Preferences to screen size:** Apple has realised that its customers prefer larger screens and thus, has unveiled gradually larger size versions in iPhone 6, iPhone 7, iPhone 8, and iPhone X.
- **Competition:** Apple's competitors, Samsung and Google, are also offering similar products and services as Apple. Google took less than a year to build the payment app Google Pay just as Apple Pay. Thus, their ability to replicate Apple's products has considerably increased the risk for Apple brand.
- **Limited market:** Apple has limited markets and restricted customer bases where it can launch its new products.
- **Cybercrimes:** The increasing number of cyber threats and crimes has made Apple systems vulnerable and less secure for consumers. The damaged reputation makes the brand more vulnerable.

Legal Factors

Apple is vulnerable to several legal factors as follows:

- **Domestic legal problems:** In the US, Apple is grappling with bans on imports for its products.
- **Apple Pay:** With Apple Pay, Apple entered the highly regulated financial sector. As a result, the company could face a potentially high level of litigation.
- **Breach of IP laws:** Apple's brands are covered by intellectual property (IP) laws. Its products and services are vulnerable to piracy and litigation.
- **Entry into the automobile sector:** Apple has invested \$6.04 billion for R&D on the manufacturing of electric vehicles. However, the company is facing tremendous pressure to return the money to its shareholders. A lawsuit has also been filed. Thus, Tim Cook has announced that the company will start production of electric vehicles by 2020.

Environmental Factors

Apple's revenues can be impacted by various environmental factors as follows:

- **Disposal of used/non-working electronic devices:** Discarding of junk devices has become a massive problem for Apple, as the effective disposal of lithium batteries is a costly venture. Otherwise, it is a major environmental issue.
- **Pollution in China:** The pollution and environmental side effects in Apple's factories in China have raised environmental concerns. To minimise the environmental issues, Apple has to pay a large amount of money.
- **Greenhouse effect:** China's initiative to reduce greenhouse gases and limit fossil fuels could potentially increase the manufacturing costs for Apple.
- **Global warming:** Due to an increase in global warming, Apple might face the issues in trans-oceanic shipping.
- **Rising electricity costs:** Apple's vulnerability to rising electricity costs due to high reliance on data centres and other Internet infrastructure are also a risk.

Results

Opportunities: The PESTLE analysis identifies various business growth opportunities for Apple. It is recommended that Apple is increasing its market penetration in Africa and other developing countries, which would help it to meet the threat of its low-priced rivals. Apart from China, Apple should look for other facilities where it can gradually shift its manufacturing base. Also, Apple could offer more variety of product base and services. Apple should also strategically plan to lower its carbon footprint and emissions, and continue to strengthen its brand value.

Threats: The PESTLE analysis has also revealed the various threats to Apple. A recommendation is for the company to calmly ride out the US-China trade war by adopting a neutral stance on the conflict. It should take steps to ensure that its suppliers follow the norms of health and safety and workers' concerns. It should improvise its processes and technologies to lower manufacturing cost, so that it can increasingly offer second-hand/used devices for developing nations at competitive prices. It should also take steps to prevent the rising threat of cybercrime.

Conclusion

On the basis of PESTLE analysis, it has been forecasted that Apple would dominate the electronic device industry in the next 5 years. This is mainly attributed to the company's impressive ability to adapt to a challenging environment. Its innovative products continue to give the company a competitive advantage.

Source: <https://myassignmenthelp.com/case-study/apple-swot-&-pestle-analysis.html>

QUESTIONS

1. What political factors affected Apple?

(**Hint:** Suicide cases against the supplier in Taiwan, political unrest in China, US-China trade war)

2. What socio-cultural factors impacted Apple?

(**Hint:** High aspiration lifestyles, rising disposable income in the developing countries, ethical concerns, the social background of acquired companies, increased usage of smartphones)

4.7 EXERCISE

1. What is the macro business environment? Why is it important to a business?
2. What are the constituents of a macro business environment?
3. What factors impact the macro business environment? Illustrate with an example.
4. Briefly describe Porter's Diamond model and Hofstede's cultural dimensions.

4.8 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Concept of Macro Business Environment	1.	b. Macro and micro environment
	2.	True
	3.	PESTLE (Political, Economic, Socio-cultural, Technological, Legal, and Environmental)
Factors Affecting Macro Business Environment	4.	d. Cost of production
	5.	d. Government

4.9 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Elearn. (2009). *Business Environment, Revised Edition* (2nd ed.). Hungary: Elsevier.
- Campbell, D., & Craig, T. (2005). *Organisations and the Business Environment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann.

E-REFERENCES

- (2019). Retrieved from <https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/an-introduction-to-business-v2.0/s13-08-the-marketing-environment.html>
- Jurevicius, O. (2019). If it's Time to be Brave a PEST may be your Best Defense. Retrieved from <https://www.strategicmanagementinsight.com/tools/pest-pestel-analysis.html>

WUOLAH

Political Environment

Table of Contents

- 5.1 Introduction
- 5.2 Political Environment of India
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 5.3 Public Sector—An Environmental Perspective
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 5.4 Government Intervention in Private Business
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 5.5 Public Sector Reforms and Performance
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 5.6 Summary
- 5.7 Key Words
- 5.8 Case Study
- 5.9 Exercise
- 5.10 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 5.11 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the political environment of India
- Describe the environmental perspective of the public sector
- Explain the government interventions in the private business
- Discuss the public sector reforms and performance

5.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied about the concept of the macro business environment, its significance, and constituents. The chapter also discussed the factors which affect the macro business environment.

Business units are affected by the political environment through various means. Thus, it is essential to have a stable political environment for the growth of the business. Political stability, relation with other countries, Centre-State relations, the views of the opposition parties, etc. are the major elements of the political environment. Therefore, the stability and efficiency of political environment lead to business growth. Long-term plans are difficult to formulate while there is lack of proper political environment. Also, the business is drastically affected by the unstable government. Likewise, business is also influenced by the relations of the government with other countries. Friendly relations with other countries provide a favourable environment for foreign trade.

In this chapter, you will study about the political environment of India and the environmental perspective of the public sector. You will also study the intervention of government in the private business. The reforms and performance of the public sector have been described at the end of this chapter.

5.2 POLITICAL ENVIRONMENT OF INDIA

A political system, including kingship, democratic, socialist, etc., as well as political openness to the market forces is referred to as political environment of a country. Business activities in a country are widely affected by its political environment.

The Directive Principles of the State Policy and Fundamental Rights as per the provisions of the Constitution of India and execution of those provisions by the state machinery have a significant effect on the business environment. The government is also mutually working with several private firms and various multilateral companies in order to attain this objective.

There are some major elements of the political environment with respect to business, namely Political System, Political Processes, Stability of Political Structure and Centre-State Relations. Now, let us discuss briefly the above-mentioned elements of the political environment:

- **Political system:** The Constitution of India governs the Indian political system. It was stimulated by Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru on 9 December, 1946 and was later

implemented by the Constituent Assembly in January 1947. It came into existence on 26th January 1950. The Constitution of India is not the creation of political revolution, but the study of the prominent people who made an exertion to mend upon the prevailing system.

The head of the Indian Union is President of India and has to perform an act in accordance with the advice of the council of ministers and the Prime Minister of India.

Parliament is the supreme legislative body of the Indian Union. It consists of two houses:

- a. **Lok Sabha:** It is also known as House of People, and members of Lok Sabha are elected by direct election for a time period of maximum five years.
- b. **Rajya Sabha:** It is also known as Council of States, and members of Rajya Sabha are indirectly chosen. The elected members of legislative assemblies of state are the members of Rajya Sabha.

The president of India also nominates some members, and one-third members retire every year.

States have:

- a. Legislative assemblies or Vidhan Sabha.
- b. Legislative councils or Vidhan Parishad (not all states have Vidhan Parishad).

Union Territories have Administrators who are directly appointed by the President whereas local Government in urban areas has elected municipal bodies.

- **Political processes:** The creation and functioning of political parties at national and state levels are governed by Election Commission of India which is an independent authority. Election Commission has the right to register political parties. Further, the state or government cannot prefer only one religion as against others. In the 42nd Constitutional Amendment, the term 'Secular' was added in the Preamble to the Constitution in 1976, which means giving equal reassurance to all religions.

Moreover, during elections, the issues which are of personal benefit are focussed more by the national leaders and occasionally takes up issues, such as alleviation of poverty, rural upliftment, problems of backward classes, etc. It is important to focus on problems of the constituency of leaders during the election campaign. This has led to no individual party having a clear majority which not only leads to instability in politics, but also impacts the growth of the business as well as the nation.

- **Stability of the political structure:** It is necessary to have a balance between executive, legislation and judiciary in order to achieve a stable political structure. In India, executive power at centre and state lies with ministries, departments, secretariats and offices. The President appoints Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG). CAG is responsible to report on account of Union and States to the President and respective Governors.

Moreover, local leadership sometimes leads to political instability as an outcome of their ulterior interests.

- **Centre-state relations:** A threefold distribution of power, namely Union List, State List, and Concurrent List is provided by the Constitution of India to evade conflict between Union and federating states. Policy-making on the subjects mentioned in Union List lies with only Central government whereas policy making on the subjects mentioned in the State list is the responsibility of only state government. But policy-making on subjects mentioned in Concurrent List lies with both centre and state governments. The President's rule can be imposed under Article 356 which also provides for the dissolution of state assembly in the situation of failure of constitutional machinery in the states.

The Constitution also specifies Centre-State relations with respect to:

- Distribution of financial powers between the Centre and states
- Mechanism of resource transfer from the Centre to states

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. The Parliament of India consists of _____ and _____.
2. The power of making policies under _____ lies with both the Central and state governments.

5.3 PUBLIC SECTOR—AN ENVIRONMENTAL PERSPECTIVE

Public sectors are those industrial sectors which are controlled and regulated either by central government or state governments or both. Thus, it can be said that the public sectors comprise the government owned corporations. Central or state government holds the majority of public shares of these Public Sector Undertakings (PSUs) which are not less than 51%.

Before 1947, there were only a few sectors, which were controlled by the states including ports, railways, telegraphs, postal services, etc. Industrial policy was formed after independence, which favoured the concept of large PSUs. Also, a roadmap for the business sector in India was constructed as a part of 1956 industrial policy, envisioning the view of a self-reliant economic growth. In the Indian economy, a strategic role was assigned to the public sectors through the Industrial Policy Resolution of 1956.

There are various types or forms of public enterprises including:

- i. Departmental undertakings such as Railways, Defence, etc.
- ii. Statutory Corporations such as LIC, the Indian Airlines Corporations, etc.
- iii. Government Companies such as Heavy Electricals Ltd., HMT Ltd., etc.
- iv. Holding Company such as Steel Authority of India Ltd.

Following are the major objectives of Public sectors:

- To encourage prompt economic development through construction and development of Infrastructure
- To create financial resources for development

- To generate employment opportunities
- To encourage redistribution of wealth and income
- To promote balanced regional growth
- To promote exports and import substitution
- To encourage Supplemental Security Incomes (SSIs)

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. Government shares in PSUs can be less than or more than 51%. (True/False)
4. Which of the following is/are not the type of PSUs?
 - a. Departmental undertakings
 - b. Ministry undertaking
 - c. Statutory corporations
 - d. Holding company

5.4 GOVERNMENT INTERVENTION IN PRIVATE BUSINESS

Government intervention refers to actions taken by a government to influence or regulate various aspects of the economy or society. These interventions can take many forms and are often implemented to achieve specific policy goals.

Government intervention involves regulatory measures implemented by the government with the aim of influencing decisions made by individuals, organisations, or groups in the economic and social realms. The main objective is to enhance a nation's social welfare by addressing market failures. Government intervention supporters are in favour of employing diverse economic policies to rectify the shortcomings of an economic system that can lead to substantial imbalances. It is believed that relying solely on the laws of supply and demand is insufficient for maintaining economic equilibrium, necessitating government intervention to ensure the proper functioning of the economy.

Let us discuss the types of government interventions in detail:

- **Price controls:** Government regulations pertaining to prices, wages, or their rate of change constitute price controls. Such regulations may apply broadly to a variety of offerings or specifically to a market involving a single commodity. There are two main types of price controls:
 - **Price floor:** This establishes the minimum price permissible for goods and services, aiming to protect suppliers.
 - **Price ceiling:** This sets the maximum price suppliers can charge for a product or service, with the objective of safeguarding consumers and ensuring affordability for as many individuals as possible.
- **Subsidy:** Subsidies are incentives provided by the government to businesses or individuals through grants, tax breaks, or cash to boost the supply of specific goods and services. For example, subsidies can be payments to suppliers, enabling

them to reduce production costs and increase output. Consequently, individuals gain access to products and services at lower prices, contributing to an elevated standard of living.

- **Tax:** Taxes serve as the primary revenue source for governments, funding various programmes and debt repayment. Governments employ these funds to enhance economic capital by providing public goods such as trains, bridges, roads, and national defense. Economic capital is essential for expanding a nation's production capacity in the long term. Taxes can be imposed directly on taxpayers, such as income tax, or indirectly through mechanisms like Goods and Services Tax.
- **Regulations:** Regulations play a crucial role in ensuring the proper functioning of economic activities. Various government regulations impact economic activities differently, falling into distinct categories:
 - **Environment:** Governments enact regulations addressing the environmental impact of business operations, including the introduction of standards for environmental safety.
 - **Employment:** Governments establish laws and regulations related to fair hiring practices, wages, and the safety and health of the workforce.
 - **Competition:** Regulations, such as those governing mergers and acquisitions measures, are implemented to foster fair competition. Deregulation, involving the removal of limits on foreign investors' share ownership, is also part of this category.

Reasons for Government's Intervention in Private Business

Governments intervene in private business for various reasons, often aiming to achieve specific economic, social, and regulatory objectives. Let us discuss these reasons:

- **Improvement in market functioning:** Government intervention seeks to enhance the efficiency and fairness of markets by addressing market failures and promoting healthy competition. This may involve the enforcement of antitrust laws to prevent monopolies, the regulation of industries to prevent abuse of market power, and the establishment of rules to ensure fair and transparent transactions. Through these interventions, the government aims to create an environment where markets can function optimally, fostering competition and benefiting both consumers and businesses.
- **Correction of inherent defects in the market mechanism:** Inherent defects in the market, such as information asymmetry, externalities, and imperfect competition, can lead to suboptimal outcomes. Government intervention is necessary to correct these defects and ensure that markets allocate resources efficiently. For instance, environmental regulations address negative externalities by imposing costs on polluters, and consumer protection laws mitigate information asymmetry by ensuring that consumers have accurate information about products and services.
- **Optimisation of the rate of savings:** Governments intervene to influence the rate of savings in the economy to achieve broader economic goals. Policies such as tax

incentives for saving, subsidies for certain types of investments, or interest rate adjustments are tools used to encourage individuals and businesses to save or invest more.

- **Provision of basic infrastructure:** Government intervention in providing basic infrastructure involves the development and maintenance of essential facilities such as transportation networks, communication systems, and utilities (e.g., water and electricity). By investing in infrastructure, the government aims to create a conducive environment for businesses to operate efficiently. Reliable infrastructure reduces transaction costs, facilitates the movement of goods and services, and enhances overall economic productivity.
- **Promotion of competition:** Government intervention to promote competition involves implementing policies and regulations that prevent monopolistic practices and encourage a competitive marketplace. This may include antitrust laws, which aim to prevent the abuse of market power, and regulatory measures to ensure fair business practices. By fostering competition, the government seeks to protect consumers, drive innovation, and maintain a level playing field for businesses.
- **Standardisation of business practices:** Government intervention in standardising business practices involves setting and enforcing regulations and standards to ensure consistency and quality in products and services. This may include establishing industry standards, safety regulations, and quality control measures. Standardisation helps build trust among consumers, enhances the overall reputation of businesses, and contributes to the efficiency of markets by reducing information asymmetry and uncertainty.

A lack of government intervention leads to a free market system characterised by minimal or absent regulations on economic exchanges, including taxes, quality controls, quotas, tariffs, and other centralised forms of government intervention. The following are the reasons why the free market mechanism fails:

- **Inequitable distribution of goods and job opportunities:** It is one of the main reasons behind the failure of the free-market mechanism. As proposed by Slither, there are two basic necessities of an economy that are essential to be fulfilled in the free-market mechanism. Initially, the goods should be offered to those people in an economy who seeks maximum pleasure by consuming those goods. Thereafter, people with greater efficiency should be given the job of producing goods as they can perform the task with greater efficiency. According to economics, the marginal utility of each good should be equal for all consumers while distributing the goods in an economy. Whereas the marginal productivity of each factor of production should remain equal while allocating resources to each industry. Although, according to Slither, the goods and resources are not distributed in such a manner in the free-market mechanism. Here, individual those are capable of paying maximum prices are offered goods regardless of the marginal utility derived from those goods. Thus, the theory of the relationship between the ability to purchase goods and satisfaction derived by consuming that good is not justified here. Also, the satisfaction level of poor varies with that of rich for the same product. For instance, an ordinary clothing of a rich man can be a delight for a poor as the

buying power of a poor is far less than a buying power of a rich person and he/she is incapable of purchasing the apparel that belongs to the rich person.

Likewise, jobs are not given in a manner that an individual is able to perform them with no extra efforts in the free-market mechanism. Also, the wages of people do not depend on their productivity in the free-market mechanism. Numerous unproductive labourers in an economy are paid more salary than the productive ones, such as politicians, bureaucrats and commission brokers.

- **Existence of perfect competition:** Another drawback of the free-market mechanism is the existence of perfect competition. Although, perfect competition plays a significant role in efficient and proper working of an economy in free-market mechanism. Increase in production cost in every market, non-existence of public goods, exclusion principle of consumption, mobilisation of factors of production, and perfect knowledge of buyers and sellers are the major other aspects for the efficient functioning of an economy under the free-market mechanism. Although, practically no perfect competition exists in the real world. Also, perfect competition is not only the factor affecting the efficient functioning of the economic system. For instance, the improper balance between social and private costs also act as an obstacle for the proper functioning of the economy even under perfect competition.
- **Judgment of individuals:** It is believed that people are always the best evaluator of their needs, preferences and tastes in the free-market mechanism. Thus, the decision regarding the choice of individuals is also the most appropriate. Although, there are some factors such as prejudices, habits, impulses, and comparison between alternatives, etc. that influence the buying behaviour of individual, especially in case of consumer goods. Therefore, the decision made by individuals are not restricted to their own choices but are also influenced by various other factors. Thus, individual's decision cannot be considered always as the best.
- **Emphasis on profit:** In a free-market mechanism, profit is considered as the prime motive for private entrepreneurs. Thus, it is not suitable to make an investment in those industries which are not fruitful, regardless of whether the industry has a significance role in the economic development of the nation or not. On the other hand, maximisation of profit in present monopolistic and oligopolistic markets are leading to underutilisation of resources which eventually leads to a decrease in productivity as well as employment.
- **Low priority for public utilities:** The failure of the free market is mainly due to this factor. There are few public utilities which are of significant nature for all people in an economy irrespective to whether they are rich or poor such as water, medical care, electricity and education. Besides these, there are some other facilities which also add up in the development of an economy of a country such as transport and communication which are referred to as socio-economic infrastructure. Although, these sectors incur huge starting cost and few returns due to which private companies are not willing to invest in these sectors. Apart from these, public utilities are consumed mutually under which the principle of exclusion in pricing is not applied. If the private sector would have owned and governed public utilities, it may have been possibility that only the individuals from the

high-income class group would be able to afford such utilities. And eventually, it would have been led to inequitable distribution of resources among people.

- **Growth of monopolies:** The failure of the free-market mechanism is widely affected by the growth of monopolies. As discussed earlier, perfect competition widely influences on free-market mechanism. There should be parity among all competitors in perfect competition. Though, practically, it is not possible as efficiency among competitors cannot be equal, thus, it leads to the state of imperfect competition. It is evident that imperfectly competitive markets can certainly not be perfectly competitive which concludes in the growth of oligopolistic and monopolistic competition. Various economic problems, such as low employment, low production and high prices rises are due to the evolution of private monopolies.

All the above-mentioned aspects are the reason behind the failure of the free-market mechanism in an economy.

For instance, in a free-market, the objective of proper allocation of goods, optimum utilisation of scarce resources, etc., is not attained. Instead it leads to the growth of improper distribution of income, private monopolies, and increase in poverty and unemployment. Though, the growth of the economy can be seen through free-market mechanism, but was unable to retain and withstand such growth. Therefore, in such a situation, the intervention of government plays a significant role in the growth of an economy.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. The development and growth of a company is widely depended on the _____ of the country.
6. Which of the following is not a reason behind the failure of the free-market mechanism?
 - a. Existence of perfect competition
 - b. Judgment of individuals
 - c. Emphasis on profit
 - d. High priority for public utilities

5.5 PUBLIC SECTOR REFORMS AND PERFORMANCE

There are various strategic roles of the public sector in the Indian economy, which are as follows:

- Development of defence industries
- Capital formation
- Development of power projects
- Balanced economic growth
- Development of infrastructure

NOTES

- Strong industrial base
- Development of basic and key industries such as iron and steel, cement, etc.
- Economies of scale
- Development of banking and insurance
- Balanced regional development
- Removal of regional disparities
- Import substitution
- Export promotion
- Saving in foreign exchange
- Diversity of projects
- Optimal allocation and utilisation of resources
- Expansion of employment opportunities
- Source of revenue to the government

Some of the issues and drawbacks of the Indian public sector are as follows:

- Mounting losses
- Delay in completion of the projects
- Over-capitalisation
- Price policy of public enterprises
- Increase in costs of construction
- Faulty planning and controls
- Political factors influence the decision about location
- Under-utilisation of capacity
- Inefficient management
- Unfavourable input-output ratio
- Shortage of raw materials and power
- Use of manpower resources in excess of actual requirements
- Labour problem resulting in strikes and lockouts
- Higher capital intensity -- low employment generation

Some of the remedies/measures that can be taken for boosting the performance of the Indian public sector are as follows:

- Reduction in unproductive expenditure
- Utilisation of installed capacity
- Better utilisation of manpower and materials

- Proper planning and control
- Improvement of efficiency of management
- Suitable price policy
- Making them autonomous
- Improvement of industrial relations
- Motivation of staff and workers

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. Development of defence industries and infrastructure is the major role of public sector. (True/False)
8. Which of the following is not a key role of the public sector?
 - a. Development of power projects
 - b. Balanced economic growth
 - c. Economies of scale
 - d. Mounting losses

5.6 SUMMARY

- A political system, including kingship, democratic, socialist, etc., as well as political openness to the market forces is referred to as the political environment of a country.
- The major elements of the political environment are Political System, Political Processes, Stability of Political Structure and Centre-State Relations.
- Public sectors are those industrial sectors which are controlled and regulated either by central government, state governments, or both.
- Parliament is the supreme legislative body of Indian Union which comprises of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.
- Public sectors comprise the government-owned corporations in which Central or state governments hold the majority of public shares which should not be less than 51%.
- The free-market mechanism can fail due to various other reasons, therefore, in such a situation, the intervention of a government plays a significant role in the growth of an economy.
- Various reasons behind the failure of the free-market mechanism can be inequitable distribution of goods and job opportunities, the existence of perfect competition, judgement of individuals, emphasis on profit, low priority for public utilities, growth of monopolies, etc.
- There are various strategic roles of the public sector in the Indian economy, such as development of defence industries, capital formation, development of power projects, etc.

5.7 KEY WORDS

- **Preamble:** The introductory statement contained within any statute or deed. This statement explains the purpose, aims and philosophy behind the concerned statute.
- **Public sector:** The part or sector of an economy that is controlled and regulated by the state.
- **Statutory corporations:** A corporation created by the state whose nature varies according to the jurisdiction.
- **Perfect competition:** A market in which there are a number of buyers as well as sellers in the market.
- **Economies of scale:** The cost savings that occur to an organisation as a result of its scale of operations.

5.8 CASE STUDY: ROLE OF GOVERNMENT IN BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

Provisions by which politically associated firms get economic favours are very common nowadays, but little is known of the effects or form of influence in business-government affairs. Not much is known about the firm-level political influence or its significance. What characterises the bargain between governments and influential firms? How do influential firms pay governments, in exchange for any benefits they receive? Recent firm-level analyses have examined various determinants of political influence, and how these connections influence market valuation while some have detailed the networks through which the benefits accrue. Still others, finally, have explained how “systems” of influence come into being, and why they endure. Much less is identified, however, of how these political connections influence decisions within firms or of the strings that may come along with political influence.

A general model in which influence entails firms to offer goods of political value in return for economic privileges. An investigation on both the characteristics that define political influence among firms in developing countries and the effects of that influence on company performance and behaviour. An argument that political influence develops the business environment for selected firms through industrial or quasi-industrial policies, but restricts their ability to fire workers.

Under such conditions, if political influence primarily sinks fixed costs over variable costs, then favoured firms will be less favoured to invest and their output will ache, even if they earn more profits than non-influential firms. Depending on the World Bank’s Enterprise reviews of approximately 8000 firms in 40 developing countries, and control for a number of prejudices present in the data. Our viewpoint is that influential firms benefit from lower managerial and monitoring barriers (including bribe taxes), superior pricing power, and easier entree to credit. But these firms also deliver politically valuable benefits to occupants through bloated payrolls and

greater tax payments. At last, these firms are worse-performing than their non-influential foils. The results highlight a potential channel by which cronyism leads to obstinate underdevelopment.

QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the role of politics in the above case.
(**Hint:** Political Environment)
2. Discuss the role of government in a business environment.
(**Hint:** Government intervention in the private sector)

5.9 EXERCISE

1. Write a short note on political environment.
2. Elaborate the main element of political environment of India.
3. What do you understand by the public sector? Also state its objectives.
4. Discuss the significance of government in the private business.
5. Discuss the role of the public sector in India.

5.10 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Political Environment of India	1.	Lok Sabha; Rajya Sabha
	2.	concurrent list
Public Sector—An Environmental Perspective	3.	False
	4.	b. Ministry undertaking
Government Intervention in the Private Business	5.	government
	6.	d. High priority for public utilities
Public Sector Reforms and Performance	7.	True
	8.	d. Mounting losses

5.11 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Blackburn, J. (2013) *Business environment*. New Delhi: Random Exports.
- Cherunilam, F. (2010). *Elements of Business Environment*. Mumbai [India]: Himalaya Pub. House.

E-REFERENCES

- Sujan (2023) What is political environment? elements, examples, & strategy, mbanote. Available at: <https://mbanote.org/political-environment/> (Accessed: 19 January 2024).
- Reasons for the Failure of Free Market Mechanisms. (2019). Retrieved from <http://www.economicdiscussion.net/market/reasons-for-the-failure-of-free-market-mechanisms/4033>

WUOLAH

Economic Environment

Table of Contents

- 6.1 Introduction**
- 6.2 Indian Economic Environment**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 6.3 Kinds of Economic Systems**
 - 6.3.1 Capitalist Economy
 - 6.3.2 Socialist Economy
 - 6.3.3 Mixed Economy
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 6.4 Economic Policies**
 - 6.4.1 Fiscal Policy
 - 6.4.2 Monetary Policy
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 6.5 Current Inflationary Position and its Impact on the Business Sector**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 6.6 Economic Legislations**
 - 6.6.1 Monopolies and Restrictive Trade Practices (MRTP) Act
 - 6.6.2 Foreign Exchange Regulation Act (FERA)
 - 6.6.3 Foreign Exchange Management Act (FEMA)
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 6.7 Economic Transition in India**
 - Self Assessment Questions

Table of Contents

- 6.8 Summary**
- 6.9 Key Words**
- 6.10 Case Study**
- 6.11 Exercise**
- 6.12 Answers for Self Assessment Questions**
- 6.13 Suggested Books and e-References**

UNIVERSITY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe the Indian economic environment
- Explain the different kinds of economic systems
- Discuss the various economic policies
- Describe the current inflationary position of India and its impact on businesses
- Discuss the various economic legislations
- Describe the economic transition in India

6.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied the political environment of India and the environmental perspective of the public sector. The chapter also discussed the government intervention in the private business. The public sector reforms and performance have been described at the end of the chapter.

Economic environment of a country encompasses external factors which have a significant effect on the creation and dissemination of wealth. The demand and supply of a firm are directly influenced by such economic factors. From the financial point of view, it also justifies the viability of a country regarding the carrying out of business practices.

The economic environment of a firm comprises various external factors like economic conditions, economic system, and economic policies. A country's economic condition can be explained in the form of the income distribution, per capita income, economic nature, economic resources, and so on.

Demand is a very important element of the economic environment. The demand for products of a firm is influenced by the confidence or insecurities of consumers and their buying ability. Hence, the economic environment has a crucial role to play in the decision making of a business.

The economic system acts as the basis for determining the degree of private business. There are several types of economic system followed across nations. Some nations have free market economies or capitalist economies whereas some have centrally planned economy or socialist economy. There are also some countries which follow the mixed economy, i.e., carrying characteristics of both capitalist and socialist economies.

In this chapter, you will study about the Indian economic environment, kinds of economic systems, and economic policies. The chapter also discusses the current inflationary position and its impact on the business sector and economic legislations. The economic transition in India has been discussed at the end of this chapter.

6.2 INDIAN ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT

India can be regarded as the fastest developing economy in the world and over the next 10-15 years, it is believed to become one of the top three global economic superpowers, because of its robust democracy and relationships with the world. In 2017-18, the GDP of India increased by 7.2 per cent, whereas in 2018-19, it increased by 7 per cent. With more than 4750 start-ups based on technology, India is still the third largest start-up base in the world.

As per research conducted by Thought Arbitrage Research Institute and ASSOCHAM, by 2020, the labour force of India is estimated to reach 160-170 million.

According to RBI, as of March 15, 2019, the foreign exchange reserves of India were US\$ 405.64 billion.

By FY27, the GDP of India is estimated to touch US\$ 6 trillion and because of the favourable reforms, demographics, globalisation and digitisation, India is set to attain an upper-middle income status.

By 2019, the revenue receipts of India are expected to reach US\$385412 billion. This is due to the reforms like GST and demonetisation and measures to boost the infrastructure.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. _____ environment of a country encompasses external factors which have a significant effect on the creation and dissemination of wealth.
 - a. Political
 - b. Economic
 - c. Socio-cultural
 - d. None of these
2. A country's economic condition can be explained in the form of
 - a. Income distribution
 - b. Economic resources
 - c. Per capita income
 - d. All of these

6.3 KINDS OF ECONOMIC SYSTEMS

An economic system can be referred to as a system that encompasses the methods of production, distribution and exchange of goods and services (excluding their consumption). The different economic systems differ on the basis of means of establishment of ownership.

6.3.1 CAPITALIST ECONOMY

Capitalism is an economic system in which the industries, trade and production means are completely owned by private bodies. This type of economy is also known as a **capitalist economy** or a **free-market economy**. This type of economy involves no governmental interference. There are many developing as well as developed nations which follow the capitalist economy system such as Germany, U.S., etc.

The production task of a capitalist economy is completely controlled by firms and industries. The market mechanism, decision-making process, the means of production carried out for the supply of products in the market are owned by private organisations.

In the words of **Karl Marx**, *Capitalism is a particular mode of organisation of production which is characterised by wage slavery, production of profit, and creation of surplus value.*

As per **Louks and Hoots**, *Capitalism is a system of the economic organisation featured by the private ownership and the use for private profit of man-made and nature made capital.*

In a free-market economy, there is no ownership of government as all the activities of production are owned by private bodies. The productive activities are not controlled or planned by anyone instead they are decided by the demand and supply of products and the price mechanism. In this type of economy, the consumers are sovereign. If the demand for products exceeds the supply, then prices increase and producers raise their level of production. On the other hand, if the supply of products exceeds the demand, then the prices of products decrease and producers reduce their level of production.

Features of Capitalism

Capitalism can be explained as the economy which utilises its capital optimally in the process of production. Technically, in capitalism, capital and goods are privately owned by businesses or individuals. Capitalism has the following features:

- **Private property:** The setting up of private property acts as the basis of economic life in the modern world. Therefore, private property is regarded as the *terra ferma* of capitalism. In capitalism, it is a fundamental right of all the individuals to be the owner of private property.
- **Large-scale production:** Industrial revolution gave a boost to capitalism along with the commencement of large-scale production. The installation of large plants and the division of labour resulted in increased levels of production. As a result, high production led to proper capital utilisation and a huge amount of profits.
- **Profit institution:** Profit institution is a significant characteristic of capitalism. Here, capitalists earn profits by making investments. Therefore, the process of production is oriented towards profit.
- **Competition:** A capitalist economy has to face strong competition in the market. This results from the artificial rise in the demand and reduction in the supply. Therefore, competition is regarded as an indivisible constituent of a capitalist economy.
- **Price mechanism:** In capitalism, the prices of goods and services are decided by their demand and supply. Production cost is not taken into consideration while setting the prices of goods and services.
- **Wage institution:** Workers are exploited under the system of capitalism. The rates of wages of workers are largely bargained. Here, the capitalist tries to extract maximum possible output from the workers and pays very less wages in return.

- **Money and credit:** Credit institutions sanction loan to capitalists for the purposes of investment. Capitalists establish their business and generate profit on the basis of credit. It further assists the capitalists in the expansion of their property.
- **Business organisation:** Presence of large business organisations with widespread business structures is another characteristic of a capitalist economy. Therefore, an enormous industrial infrastructure can be set up by combining a huge amount of funds from them and similarly from other shareholders too.
- **Market economy:** The process of production, distribution and exchange under a capitalist economy is governed by the market forces. There is interference of government over such activities. The economy of the market is greatly dependent on the law of demand and supply. Hence, it is also referred to as a free or liberalised economy.

6.3.2 | SOCIALIST ECONOMY

Socialism is an economic system where ownership and regulation are under the government. All the activities of production and other functions like allocation of resources, consumption, distribution of income, investment pattern, etc., are under the direction and control of the government. It is also referred to as the socialist or command economy. In contrast to capitalism, socialism ensures public welfare and equality among people.

The communist countries are the origin of socialist economies. In these nations, the common interest of the entire community was preferred over the interest of the individuals. After the 1980s, the number of communist nations started to reduce. But there are still some democratic nations which are presently run by governments which are socialist-inclined. They have adopted some components of a command economy. For example, India and France both function under the planning system of the government.

In socialism, enterprises which are owned by the government have limited access to incentives for cost control since they cannot go past their policies of the business. This is against the socialist economy's objective which makes sure resource mobilisation for the society's welfare. Under socialism, private firms are restricted and no incentives are offered for their efforts to cater to the needs of the consumers. Therefore, command economies are not innovative and dynamic which may bring the economy to a standstill.

In the words of **Leftwich**, *In socialism the role of the state is central. It owns the means of production and directs economic activity.*

As per **H.D. Dickinson**, *Socialism is an economic organisation of society in which the material means of production are owned by the whole community and operated by the organs representative of and responsible to the community according to a general economic plan, all members of the community being entitled to benefit from the results of such socialised production on the basis of equal right.*

Features of Socialism

The salient features of a socialist economy are as follows:

- **Social ownership:** In socialism, there is no private ownership since all the production means such as banks, railways, mines, factories, farms, etc., belong to the society. A person can only possess a private property by way of consumer goods, furniture, residence, and so on.
- **Social welfare:** Social welfare is one of the crucial objectives of socialism. This is achieved through proper resource utilisation and catering to the society's needs and wants. It takes care of the economy's benefits as a whole instead of the needs of some individuals. Unlike a capitalist economy, where means of production is profit oriented, in socialism, productive resources are utilised in order to produce goods and services for the purpose of attaining social welfare. Here, the production of necessary goods is given more significance instead of the luxury goods.
- **Central planning:** Under socialism, all the activities of production and their associated goals and plans are designed by the Central Planning Authority. As per these plans, various programmes and objectives are implemented by the government.
- **Equality of income and opportunity:** Socialism strives to remove or reduce disparities in income and wealth and offers equal opportunity to every individual. Social ownership and production for the welfare of the society and community abolish unequal distribution of wealth and income. It also offers equal opportunity to every person by way of professional training, free education, and so on. However, it is not possible to have absolute equality since capabilities differ from person to person.
- **Classless society:** Contrary to capitalism, socialism is a classless society, where there is no division of society into classes like labour class or elite class, etc. Here, all the activities of production are carried out by the community as a whole and, therefore class-conflict is very less likely to happen.

6.3.3 | MIXED ECONOMY

Mixed economy combines the characteristics of both capitalism and socialism. It is the aggregate of both public and private ownership. A mixed economy offers private enterprises the freedom to function and develop but also permits government interference in matters for maintaining economic objectives. The combination of government interference and private sector varies from one nation to another. India is a mixed economy and comprises all the relevant characteristics of capitalism and socialism for the regulation and control of the economy.

The decisions pertaining to economic planning and resources allocation is undertaken by the Central Government. The economy's overall growth and development depend upon the achievement of its goals through collaborative efforts of both the private and public firms. In a mixed economy, some areas are operated by private firms, whereas some areas are reserved for the public firms. Also, there are few areas, where both private and public sectors work in a collaborative way.

As per **Samuelson**, *Mixed economy is that economy in which both public and private institutions exercise economic control.*

In the words of **Pickersgill**, *The primary difference between the mixed economy and market socialism is the relatively greater importance of individual decision making, private property and the reliance on market-determined prices to guide the allocation of resources. The mixed economy differs from competitive capitalism with respect to the share of collective decision making in the economy.*

Features of Mixed Economy

The main features of a mixed economy are as follows:

- **Co-existence of the public and private sector:** In a mixed economy, both public and private sectors operate independently but strive to achieve a single objective. Public sectors operate for the society's welfare while the private sector is oriented towards earning profits. Therefore, the government has devised several economic policies in order to regulate and govern the economic activities of the private sector. Such policies include monetary policy, fiscal policy, taxation policy, etc.
- **Individual freedom:** Government imposes restrictions for ensuring the welfare of the society. Hence, manufacturers have to abide by these rules and regulations. For example, the government might put restrictions on the production of harmful and hazardous goods. However, individuals are free to buy any product. Therefore, despite all sorts of government control, people have the freedom to purchase and choose the occupation or profession of their own choice.
- **Economic welfare:** The primary purpose of a mixed economy is to ensure economic welfare. This can be brought about by reducing regional imbalances and by offering opportunities for employment. The government has taken several steps towards society's upliftment. The monetary and fiscal policies are designed to govern and control the economic activities of the private sector.
- **Economic planning:** The Central Government devises economic plans and direct the functions of both the public and private firms in view of that. The public sector activities are directly regulated by the government whereas different incentives and subsidies are offered to the private sector for functioning as per the economic objectives.
- **Price mechanism:** Price system of the economy is regulated by the price policy framed by the government. For offering commodities at economical rates to the weaker sections of the society, the government provides financial and economic aid to the producers. It offers subsidies to the target groups and also provides material inputs below the market price or free of cost to various firms. Therefore, under a mixed economy, people avail an enormous amount of benefits and support from the government.
- **Free and controlled economic development:** Mixed economy is regarded as the best alternative to the socialist and capitalist economies. It attempts to eliminate all the issues and drawbacks associated with the sustainable growth and development of the economy. It gives freedom of occupation and choice as well as controls and governs the economic activities.

- **Government intervention:** Under the mixed economy, the government can interfere in order to stabilise the economy, particularly during a crisis. For example, during the global crisis of 2008, the governments of the United States and other nations intervened into the affairs of the economy for controlling and managing the effect of the crisis.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. In which economic system, the industries, trade and production means are completely owned by private bodies?
 - a. Socialism
 - b. Capitalism
 - c. Mixed
 - d. None of these
4. _____ economy is that economy in which both public and private institutions exercise economic control.
 - a. Mixed
 - b. Capitalism
 - c. Socialism
 - d. All of these

6.4 ECONOMIC POLICIES

For giving a boost to the development of the country and eliminating the issues of the economy (such as poverty, lack of infrastructure, low industrial production, and so forth). India embarked on the path of economic reforms in the year 1991. Economic policy enables the government to formulate and take various actions for the economy's welfare. These actions involve designing yearly budgets, framing tax rates and other plans. In a business environment, such economic policies influence the nature of ownership, labour markets, industrial relations and the other related aspects.

Both the internal and external factors influence the formulation of the economic policy of the nation. The political beliefs and philosophy of the various political parties come under the internal factors, whereas, the several international institutions such as World Bank, International Monetary Fund (IMF), credit rating agencies come under the external factors. By formulating the economic policy, a broad approach was taken to achieve a notable position in the world economy. The economic reforms of 1991 transformed the prevailing economic mind-set of India. The protectionism image was eliminated and the nation became liberal. The doors were opened to foreign investors and they were permitted to invest in Indian firms and organisations. Huge amounts of funds flowed into the Indian economy by way of FDI and portfolio investments. For enjoying the full benefits from such economic policies, some level of consistency between economic policies and the type of trade was maintained. However, while the new economic policies were formulated, the old ones were also kept in mind. This was done with the objective of keeping developmental targets in mind.

6.4.1 | FISCAL POLICY

Fiscal policy implies the policy of the government regarding expenditure and tax. It is a form of economic policy which regulates and controls the management of public

debt, borrowings, expenditure and tax system within a country. The prime emphasis of fiscal policy is on the currency flow in a specific economy.

The process of flow of money is initiated by the private sector which is normally transferred to the government. The government makes use of these funds for the economy's welfare. Private sector uses the tax system as a medium to channelise funds to the government and these funds then return to the economy by the way of public expenditure. Management of public debt is another important aspect in fiscal policy. Loans from the government, payment of interests and retirement of matured debts, all come under the purview of public debt management. Hence, fiscal policy is considered to be very crucial for the economy of India.

The role of fiscal policy varies as per the country's requirements. Developed countries make use of fiscal policy as an instrument to increase the level of employment and maintain stability in the economy. On the other hand, underdeveloped countries make use of fiscal policy to give a boost to economic growth.

As per **Buehler**, *By fiscal policy is meant the use of public finance or expenditure, taxes, borrowing and financial administration to further our national economic objective.*

In the words of **Arthur Smithies**, *Fiscal policy is a policy under which government uses its expenditure and revenue programmes to produce desirable effects and avoid undesirable effects on the national income, production and employment.*

6.4.2 | MONETARY POLICY

Monetary policy is referred to as the policy of Central Bank (RBI, in the context of India) of an economy in which the cost, availability and the usage of money are controlled and regulated by using monetary methods in order to achieve predetermined goals and objectives. It uses several tools to set the level of aggregate demand for goods and services or to assess the patterns and trends in the economic sectors.

The extent of economic activities and the supply and demand of flow of credit are influenced by the variations in the economy. These variations occur because of the amendments made in the monetary policy. Consecutively the monetary policy changes because of the varying availability and cost of credits. This change makes an impact on the asset pattern of commercial banks and financial institutions.

In the words of **Paul Einzig**, *Monetary policy is the attitude of the political authority towards the monetary system of the community under its control.*

As per **Johnson**, *Monetary policy is defined as policy employing central bank's control of the supply of money as an instrument for achieving the objectives of general economic policy.*

The role of monetary policy is crucial in the economic development of a nation. Over the years, the requirement for monetary control has been realised extensively. It not only regulates the extent of supply and demand of currency but also controls the functioning of currency, deposits, credit and foreign exchange of the country.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. _____ policy implies the policy of the government regarding expenditure and tax.
 - a. Monetary
 - b. Fiscal
 - c. Industrial
 - d. All of these
6. Which policy is defined as policy employing central bank's control of the supply of money as an instrument for achieving the objectives of general economic policy?
 - a. Fiscal
 - b. Monetary
 - c. Industrial
 - d. None of these

6.5 CURRENT INFLATIONARY POSITION AND ITS IMPACT ON THE BUSINESS SECTOR

In February 2019, the Indian consumer prices increased by 2.57 per cent annually, following a downwardly revised 1.97 per cent increase in January and higher than the expectations of the market of 2.43 per cent. As prices of food dropped, this was the highest rate of inflation in four months. RBI (Reserve Bank of India), in its meeting in February 2019, lowered its predictions of inflation to 2.8 per cent for the period of January-March 2019. It also highlighted a deflation in food products and a drop-in inflation of fuel. From 2012 until 2019, India's inflation rate was at an average of 6.22 per cent; lowest being at 1.54 per cent in June, 2017 and highest being at 12.17 per cent in November 2013. Impact of inflation on the business sector is as follows:

- **Reduced demand for products and services:** In the situations of high inflation, both savings and investments are negatively influenced in a negative manner. Because of low demand of goods and services, most of the businesses get adversely affected. Many customers tend to shift towards the Internet marketing, as the prices of goods and services are comparatively cheaper on the websites. The services provided by the business portals also get affected in a negative manner because of a reduction in demand for goods and services. Many industries in India are also affected negatively due to the reduction in demand in various sectors like consumer durable goods and automobiles, etc., which results due to price rise because of inflation.
- **Increased product price:** There are primarily two key factors responsive to the cost-push inflation. First is the high price of raw materials and second is the increase in the rate of wages. In fact, the rise in prices in any of the production factors like land, labour, material or technology can lead to a price rise of the products. Profit margins of businesses get affected whenever the production or operation cost is increased. The increased costs of operations are transferred to the customers by way of increased prices which gives rise to cost-push inflation.
- **Market bubbles:** When the central bank maintains the rate of inflation in the economy within limits artificially, different forms of market bubbles are created.

NOTES

Conventionally, easy credit and increased supply of money are related to low rates of interest. It creates speculations and market bubbles in the economy.

- **Economic downturn:** Sometimes, downturns in the economy are resulted due to the combined effect of high prices and economic bubbles. Bursting of such bubbles takes place when some remedial measures are taken. The impact of such situations is mostly realised by small businesses and workers. The employment industry faces the worst of high inflation rates. It leads to an increased rate of unemployment and also decreases consumer spending.
- **Reduced purchasing power:** The reduction in the purchasing power of currency and its depreciation are the two key and immediate outcomes of inflation. It is the retired individuals with limited or fixed incomes who are affected the worst by depreciation as the purchasing power of their money gets substantially reduced. However, individuals who are not dependent on a fixed income are less affected since they can counteract the depreciation by raising their fees.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. Which of the following options the impact of inflation on the business sector?
 - a. Reduced purchasing power
 - b. Economic downturn
 - c. Increased product price
 - d. All of the above
8. From 2012 until 2019, India's inflation rate was at an average of _____ per cent.

a. 8.97	b. 7.25
c. 6.22	d. 4.9

6.6 ECONOMIC LEGISLATIONS

Socio-economic issues such as unethical trade practices, exploitation of labour and growth of monopolies are always present in an economy. The principal reasons behind these problems are conflicts between the government and private sector regarding social and private interests and social responsibilities which are normally discarded by private business organisations. Therefore, some laws and acts called the economic legislations are formulated by the governments to manage them. Following are some economic legislations formulated by the Indian government for private business organisations:

6.6.1 | MONOPOLIES AND RESTRICTIVE TRADE PRACTICES (MRTP) ACT

Various new and large business organisations have entered the Indian trade market after independence. The level of competition was not extreme hence, they tried to establish their monopoly. The intentions of those business organisations were not hidden from the eyes of the Indian government. Hence, the MRTP bill was passed for protecting the consumers' interest, which eventually resulted in the emergence of Monopolies and Restrictive Trade Practices Act of 1969. This law empowered the

MRTP commission to close down all those firms and organisations which attempted to hinder or get in the way of healthy competition.

The MRTP bill was passed to safeguard the rights of consumers and check any kind of monopoly or alliance which might prove harmful for the interests of the consumers. Its purpose is to curb the practice of build-up of wealth in a few hands, which can be harmful to the consumers. It also curbs the monopoly and unfair practices of the trade.

Following are the main objectives of the MRTP Act:

- To regulate and control the build-up of financial power
- To curb monopoly and dominant practices of trade until they prove to be helpful for the people
- To restrict unfair trade practices

6.6.2 | FOREIGN EXCHANGE REGULATION ACT (FERA)

In 1973, Foreign Exchange regulation Act (FERA) was passed. It put very strict regulations on some specific form of payments, securities and dealings that had a negative effect on the export and import of currency and foreign exchange. The FERA bill was framed in order to regulate foreign exchange and payments. From January 1, 1974, FERA was brought into effect.

At the time when the foreign exchange reserves in India were low, the FERA was introduced. The foreign exchange became rare. Hence, FERA assumed that the Indian Government was the rightful owner of all the foreign exchange earned by the residents of India. Therefore, it had to be accumulated and given to the RBI (Reserve Bank of India). The transactions restricted by the RBI were mainly not allowed under FERA. The objectives of FERA are as follows:

- To regulate the foreign payments
- To regulate the transactions in securities and foreign exchange
- To conserve foreign exchange for India

6.6.3 | FOREIGN EXCHANGE MANAGEMENT ACT (FEMA)

In 1999, Foreign Exchange Management Act (FEMA) was brought to replace Foreign Exchange Regulation Act (FERA), 1973. The purpose of FERA was to regulate the conducting of the business of Indian companies in foreign markets and foreign companies in the Indian market. FEMA was brought into effect from January 1, 2000. This act applies to every office, branch or agency in India and also to the foreign offices and branches of people who are the Indian residents.

FEMA was framed by the Indian Government and is directly associated with the foreign direct investment in the economy. FEMA has a crucial role to play in facilitating external payment and trade.

Hence, FEMA is an Act of the Parliament of India *to consolidate and amend the law relating to the foreign exchange with the objective of facilitating external trade and payments*

NOTES

and for promoting the orderly development and maintenance of foreign exchange market in India. The main Objectives of FEMA are as follows:

- To amend and consolidate FERA
- To assist in external payments and trade
- To facilitate the systematic development of the Indian foreign exchange market

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

9. What replaced the Foreign Exchange Regulation Act (FERA) in 1999?
 - a. MRTP Act
 - b. FEMA
 - c. Competition Act
 - d. Goods and Sales Tax
10. Which of the following is an objective of the MRTP Act?
 - a. To regulate and control the build-up of financial power
 - b. To curb monopoly and dominant practices of trade until they prove to be helpful for the people
 - c. To restrict unfair trade practices
 - d. All of these

6.7 ECONOMIC TRANSITION IN INDIA

India has been the concept of a mixed economy since the beginning of the 1950s. This means that the Indian economy is a mixture of both socialism and capitalism. During that time, many international donors and top development economists praised this approach of India. The mixed economy made way for a highly controlled private sector, import substitution and a huge public sector. The result was actually 'mixed' since it resulted in both the slow growth of socialism and the disparities of capitalism. India is a mixed economy due to the presence of the following factors:

1. **Coexistence of public and private sectors:** India transformed into a mixed economy because of the coexistence of public sector and huge private sectors. Such coexistence has been possible because of the industrial policies framed by the Government of India. Public sector runs some basic and heavy industries. However, the scope of private sector has widened with the liberalisation of the Indian economy.
2. **Planned development:** During independence, the industrial sector of India was poor. The Indian economy became weak because of the long period of stagnation under the rule of British Raj. Therefore, five-years plans were formulated as per the Directive Principles of State Policy in order to boost the rural economy and provide a basis for the development of the industrial sector.
3. **Planned objectives:** The concept of the five-year plan was introduced in India in 1951. These plans had the following basic objectives:
 - Growth of the economy
 - Modernisation

- Social justice
- Self-reliance
- Poverty elimination
- Employment opportunities
- Fulfilment of basic needs such as food, shelter, clothing, etc.

In 2015, the concept of five-year plan was dissolved and NITI Ayog was established. It became operational from 1st January 2015. The NITI Ayog is a think-tank which works as a strategic advisory authority for the central and state governments. NITI Ayog provides strategic and technical advice with respect to various policy areas.

4. **Role of public sector:** The public sector had a crucial role to play in India's development. The speed of economic growth was boosted by the public sector. Moreover, it tried to eliminate the inequality in the wealth and income. Public sector works for the following areas:
 - Infrastructure development
 - Spreading the industries in various remote and backward areas
 - Setting up of basic and heavy industries
 - Marketing and trading activities along with international trade.
5. **Private sector:** Private sector encompasses the organized industry along with small scale industries, agriculture, housing, construction and trade. Almost three-fourth of the economy is employed under the private sector. The MRTP Act and the Industries Development and Regulation Act have been established to control the private sector.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

11. Which type of economy does India follow?
 - a. Mixed
 - b. Socialism
 - c. Capitalism
 - d. None of these
12. Both the public and private sectors exist in India. (True or False)

6.8 SUMMARY

- The economic environment of a firm comprises various external factors like economic conditions, economic system and economic policies.
- Economic policy enables the government to formulate and take various actions for the economy's welfare.
- Socio-economic issues such as unethical trade practices, exploitation of labour and growth of monopolies are always present in an economy. Therefore, some laws and acts called the economic legislations are formulated by the governments to manage them.

6.9 KEY WORDS

- **Economic environment:** The external factors which have a significant effect on the creation and dissemination of the wealth of a nation.
- **Monetary policy:** The policy of Central Bank of an economy in which the cost, availability and the usage of money are controlled and regulated by using monetary methods in order to achieve predetermined goals and objectives.
- **Foreign Exchange Management Act (FEMA):** FEMA was brought into effect from January 1, 2000. This act applies to every office, branch or agency in India and also to the foreign offices and branches of people who are the Indian residents.
- **Fiscal policy:** The policy of the government regarding expenditure and tax
- **Capitalist economy:** An economic system in which the industries, trade and production means are completely owned by private bodies.
- **Socialist economy:** An economic system where the ownership and regulation are under the government. All the activities of production and other functions like allocation of resources, consumption, distribution of income, investment pattern, etc., are under the direction and control of the government.

6.10 CASE STUDY: INFLATION AND THE INDIAN ECONOMY

Inflation is the rise in prices which occurs when the demand for goods and services exceeds their available supply. In simpler terms, inflation is a situation where too much money chases too few goods.

In India, the Wholesale Price Index (WPI), which was the main measure of the inflation rate consisted of three main components - primary articles, which included food articles, constituting 22% of the index; fuel, constituting 14% of the index; and manufactured goods, which accounted for the remaining 64% of the index.

For purposes of analysis and to measure more accurately the price levels for different sections of society and as well for different regions, the RBI also kept track of consumer price indices.

The average annual GDP growth in the 2000s was about 6% and during the second quarter (July-September) of fiscal 2006-2007, the growth rate was as high as 9.2%. All this growth was bound to lead to higher demand for goods. However, the growth in the supply of goods, especially food articles such as wheat and pulses, did not keep pace with the growth in demand. As a result, the prices of food articles increased. According to Subir Gokarn, Executive Director and Chief Economist, CRISIL, 'The inflationary pressures have been particularly acute this time due to the supply side constraints (of food articles) which are a combination of temporary and structural factors'.

To control inflation, the RBI announced some measures late 2006 and early 2007. These measures included increasing repo rates, the Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR) and

reducing the rate of interest on cash deposited by banks with the RBI. With the increase in the repo rates and bank rates, banks had to pay a higher interest rate for the money they borrowed from the RBI. Consequently, the banks increased the rate at which they lent to their customers. The increase in the CRR reduced the money supply in the system because banks now had to keep more money as reserves. The RBI again increased the CRR to 5.5% (an increase of 50 basis points) in December 2006. On January 31, 2007, the RBI increased the repo rate by 25 basis points to 7.5%.

In 2006-07, all the measures that were taken by the RBI and the government to control the inflation were based on the traditional and time-tested measures to curb inflation. However, some economists argued that the steps taken by the government to control inflation were not enough.

It was opined by various economic analysts that the RBI could have handled the inflation without changing with the interest rates. The analysts held that changing the interest rates may slow the pace of economic growth. Some of the analysts also explained that high inflation is considered as an indication of economic mismanagement and high inflation that continues to exist for a long period of time affects the confidence of investors. However, the inflation rate in emerging economies was usually higher than developed economies. (Refer to Exhibit VI for inflation rates in some developed and developing countries)

Source: <http://www.icmrindia.org/casestudies/catalogue/Economics/The%20Indian%20Economy-Dealing%20with%20Inflation-Case%20Study.htm>

QUESTIONS

1. Explain the concept of inflation in the Indian context.
(**Hint:** Inflation is normally associated with high prices, declining purchasing power)
2. Give out the ways of curbing inflation.
(**Hint:** Monetary measures and fiscal measures)

6.11 EXERCISE

1. Write a note on India's inflationary position and its impact on the business sector.
2. What are the different kinds of economic systems? Explain them.
3. What is meant by economic policies? Explain monetary policy and fiscal policy.
4. Give a detailed description of economic transition in India.
5. Write short notes on:
 - i. MRTP Act
 - ii. Capitalist economy
 - iii. Mixed economy
 - iv. Socialist economy

6.12 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Indian Economic Environment	1.	a. Economic
	2.	d. All of these
Kinds of Economic Systems	3.	b. Capitalism
	4.	a. Mixed
Economic Policies	5.	b. Fiscal
	6.	b. Monetary
Current Inflationary Position and its Impact on the Business Sector	7.	d. All of these
	8.	c. 6.22
Economic Legislations	9.	b. FEMA
	10.	d. All of these
Economic Transition in India	11.	a. Mixed
	12.	True

6.13 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES**SUGGESTED BOOKS**

- Saleem, Shaikh. *Business Environment 3rd Edition*. Pearson Education.
- Fernando, *Business Environment*. Pearson Education.

E-REFERENCES

- (2019). Retrieved from <https://www.foreignaffairs.com/reviews/capsule.../india-transition-freeing-economy>
- TRADING ECONOMICS | 20 million Indicators from 196 Countries. (2019). Retrieved from <https://tradingeconomics.com>

Technical and Legal Environment

Table of Contents

- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 What is Technical Environment?
 - 7.2.1 Types of Technology
 - 7.2.2 Factors of Technological Environment
 - 7.2.3 How the Technological Environment Affects Business?
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.3 What is Legal Environment?
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.4 Acts Influencing Legal Environment of Business in India
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.5 Laws Protecting Consumers, Society and Public Interest
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.6 Intellectual Property Regime
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.7 Legislation for Unfair Trade Practices
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 7.8 Summary
- 7.9 Key Words
- 7.10 Case Study
- 7.11 Exercise
- 7.12 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 7.13 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the concept of technical environment
- Describe an overview of the legal environment
- Explain the acts influencing the legal environment of business
- Discuss the laws protecting consumers, society and public interest
- Explain the intellectual property regime
- Describe the legislation for unfair trade practices

7.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you have studied about the concept of Indian economic environment, kinds of economic systems and economic policy. The chapter also discussed about the current inflationary position and its impact on the business sector. Economic legislations and economic transition have been also described at the end of the chapter.

Martin Luther King once said, *“Morality cannot be legislated, but behaviour can be regulated. Judicial decrees may not change the heart, but they can restrain the heartless.”* As a future business manager and a leader, you must have a good understanding of the law and legal risks involved in making and influencing business decisions. This will help you not only to gain a competitive advantage but also avoid legal pitfalls. The Indian legislation has several acts and amendments to protect consumer rights, resolve disputes, protect Intellectual Property rights, and prohibit unfair trade practices. Gaining an in-depth understanding of these laws would require an in-depth analysis.

However, this chapter provides concise and relevant information about the legislation and laws affecting businesses in India. You will also learn about the technical and legal environment along with the legal provisions describing agreements and contracts, consumer protection rights, IP and trademarks, and unfair trade practices and monopolies.

7.2 WHAT IS TECHNICAL ENVIRONMENT?

The technical environment, also referred as the technological environment, includes the technological aspects that impact operations, decision-making, and overall efficiency. This can involve considerations such as the types of computing systems in use, software applications, communication networks, and any specialised tools or equipment that are integral to the business processes.

The technical environment is dynamic and subject to change as technology evolves. Factors such as advancements in hardware, the introduction of new software platforms, and changes in communication technologies can all contribute to shifts in the technical environment.

The term “technical or technological environment” describes the level of science and technology in the nation as well as associated factors like the pace of technical advancement and the institutional framework for the creation and use of new technologies, among others.

In a business context, the technical or technological environment encompasses changes in output, production methodologies, equipment utilisation, and product quality. It involves forces associated with scientific innovations and enhancements in both products and production technologies.

7.2.1 | TYPES OF TECHNOLOGY

Technology refers to the application of scientific knowledge, tools, methods, and systems to solve problems, create products, and achieve specific objectives. It encompasses a broad range of techniques that are used to transform resources into solutions that improve human life, enhance efficiency, and address various challenges. Technology can be categorised into different types. Let’s discuss the types of technology in Table 1:

TABLE 1: Types of Technology

Types	Meaning	Examples
Hard Technology	Hard technology refers to tangible, physical elements and assets used in production processes or other technical applications.	Blueprints, machinery, equipment, other capital goods
Soft Technology	Soft technology encompasses non-physical, intangible elements that contribute to the operational and strategic aspects of a system or organisation.	Management know-how, Finance, Marketing
Labour-Intensive	Labour-intensive technology refers to production processes that heavily rely on human labour rather than automation or advanced machinery.	Relatively primitive (traditional) technology
Capital-Intensive	Capital-intensive technology involves a high level of automation, advanced machinery, and substantial capital investment in the production process. This type of technology relies more on sophisticated equipment and technology than on human labour.	Highly advanced technology

7.2.2 | FACTORS OF TECHNOLOGICAL ENVIRONMENT

Some factors in the technological environment are as follows:

- **Innovation and disruption:** The rate of technological innovation can lead to the development of new products, services, and business models. This innovation can either create new opportunities for businesses or disrupt existing industries and practices.
- **Automation and Artificial Intelligence (AI):** The integration of automation and AI technologies can improve efficiency and reduce costs for businesses. However, it can also lead to job displacement in certain industries and require organisations to adapt their workforce and skill sets accordingly.

- **E-commerce and online presence:** The rise of e-commerce and online platforms has transformed the way businesses reach and interact with customers. Companies need to establish a strong online presence, optimise for mobile platforms, and adapt their marketing and sales strategies to the digital landscape.
- **Data analytics and big data:** The ability to collect, analyse, and leverage large sets of data has become a key competitive advantage. Businesses can use data analytics to gain insights into consumer behaviour, optimise operations, and make informed strategic decisions.
- **Internet of Things (IoT):** The proliferation of IoT devices, which are interconnected and can share data, has implications for various industries. Businesses can use IoT for improved monitoring, efficiency, and customer experiences, but they must also address security and privacy concerns.
- **Mobile technology:** The widespread use of smartphones and tablets has changed consumer behaviour and expectations. Businesses need to optimise their online presence for mobile devices, develop mobile applications, and consider mobile marketing strategies.
- **Cloud computing:** Cloud computing allows businesses to access computing resources and storage on-demand. It can enhance flexibility, scalability, and cost-effectiveness, enabling organisations to focus on their core competencies.
- **Cybersecurity:** Cybersecurity technologies safeguard businesses from cyber threats, protecting sensitive data, customer information, and intellectual property. Investing in robust cybersecurity measures is crucial for maintaining trust, avoiding financial losses, and complying with data protection regulations.

Let us discuss how technological factors affected Apple and Google.

Significant progress in Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) is transforming numerous industries. Both Apple and Google are dedicating significant resources to these advanced technologies. The influence of AI is evident in Apple's Siri voice assistant, and Google's Assistant showcases the capabilities of this technology. Additionally, Google's effective use of ML algorithms enhances personalised search outcomes and reinforces the accuracy of its predictive models.

7.2.3 | HOW THE TECHNOLOGICAL ENVIRONMENT AFFECTS BUSINESS?

Businesses are impacted by technological advancements in a number of ways. A productive employee is one who operates with efficiency. Also, a company has a better chance of developing when it stays updated with the latest technology.

Leaders in strategy are always searching for new advancements and improvements in the technology world. By doing this, businesses will not only enhance their operations but also have a thorough understanding of the business transformation phase. They will come up with ground-breaking methods for rapid expansion.

Positive Impact of Technology on Business

- **Operations are transformed by technology:** The use of technology in business has changed the way business's function. Information technology advancements have

nearly taken over every area within the organisation. In contrast to the previous method of keeping data in files and registers, data is now saved on data servers and in cloud computing. Technology advancements have also brought about the introduction of digital marketing techniques, which allow businesses to offer their products and services more widely. Technological improvements have led to the introduction of more advanced techniques in product and service development. Hence, using technology to develop marketing strategies is beneficial.

- **Using technology to develop marketing strategies is favourable:** Businesses can collect, record, retrieve, and use data in new ways due to technology, which also enables them to develop innovative business strategies. Organisations can monitor and assess consumer trends and their needs for a certain product using the data that is accessible. Businesses may now analyse the environment and create marketing strategies based on their understanding of the environment.

Negative Impact of Technology on Business

- **Business relationships:** Businesses are able to organise meetings virtually, without requiring everyone to be in the same location, by using internet technologies like Skype and other chat rooms. A face-to-face meeting is more intimate than this kind of gathering. This tends to lessen the human element of professional relationships. Brainstorming and other intimate touch-based forms of communication have decreased due to physical separation.
- **Brick and mortar:** Brick and mortar refers to a traditional physical storefront or business location where customers can buy products or services in person. Technological advancements in e-commerce are unfavourable to physical retail establishments. Small and medium-sized enterprises in the industry are facing significant challenges in competing with larger, online organisations. The advancement of technology in the corporate world ultimately results in the closure of small businesses.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Which one of the following technologies safeguards businesses from cyber threats, protecting sensitive data, customer information, and intellectual property?
 - a. Cybersecurity
 - b. Cloud Computing
 - c. Internet of Things (IoT)
 - d. Artificial Intelligence
2. Which of the following technologies has the ability to collect, analyse, and leverage large sets of data, which has become a key competitive advantage?
 - a. E-commerce
 - b. Automation
 - c. Data Analytics
 - d. Mobile technologies

7.3 WHAT IS LEGAL ENVIRONMENT?

The legal environment in business is a code of conduct that defines the boundaries of business within a legal jurisdiction. The law has been meant to mean different things at different periods.

Given below are some definitions:

- **Traditionalist approach:** Legal traditionalists define law as a body of principles and rules that courts use during dispute resolution. As per them, no matter how much society changes its beliefs, the basic concepts of right and wrong will remain intact.
- **Environmental approach:** Law is a tool used to control society. Thus, it must always demonstrate the moral constructs of the society through the execution of rules and regulations. This environmental approach is wider than the traditional viewpoint.
- **Social jurisprudence approach:** Law is shaped by the society and its means of enforcement. It is a way to provide a systematic, predictable system of social order, change and legal reform.

Thus, the main objectives of the law are as follows:

- Maintain peace
- Deliver justice
- Provide equality and uniformity
- Protect individual rights
- Protect minorities against injustice
- Maintain social control
- Maintain law and order
- Resolve disputes
- Provide systematic social change and legal reform

Before you learn about the different categories of the law, you should have an idea about the terms right and duty. A **right** is the ability of an individual, as provided by the law, to demand someone else to perform or stop in a certain activity. A **duty** is a commitment of an individual to perform or refrain from a certain activity. Right and duty are correlated in that an individual cannot have a right without having a corresponding duty to another person.

The main categories of law are:

- **Substantive law vs. Procedural law:** Substantive law includes all the laws that define and regulate legal rights and duties. If a rule states that promises are enforced only if a party gets something of value from the other party, then it is the part of the substantive law. For example, business contracts are substantive law. But what happens if a contract is violated? Then, procedural law comes into play. Procedural law is used to enforce the rights established by the substantive law. It answers questions such as:
 - How should a lawsuit be filed?
 - What papers should be filed?
 - Which court should be attended?
 - What witnesses are required?

- **Civil law vs. Criminal law:** Civil law includes all the laws that define the duties of individuals or legal entities, such as corporations or companies. Violations of civil law include employment violation, contract breach, product liability and copyright infringement. Criminal law, on the other hand, is an act proscribed by the law to protect the public at large. Criminal violations include when individuals in positions of authority to commit crime against other individuals, the company, or the consumer. Examples include fraud, bribery, insider trading, embezzlement, cybercrime, public corruption, identity theft, consumer fraud and forgery.

There are three main sources of law:

- **Customs:** Customs refer to the set practices or unwritten rules that have become a society's norm. These were the primary sources of law in ancient societies. Some customs still prevail as an important source of law. For example, Saptapadi or 'seven steps' is the most important rite of a Hindu marriage ceremony, when the newly-wed couple takes seven steps around the fire. This custom of Saptapadi is incorporated in Section 7 of the Hindu Marriage Act, 1955. Customs can be divided into two classes:
 - **Customs without sanction:** These customs are not mandatory and are followed due to public opinion.
 - **Customs with sanction:** These customs are mandatory and enforced by the state. These include:
 - ✓ **Legal custom:** This custom's authority is absolute. It is recognised and enforced by a court of law. These may be general (throughout a state) or local (restricted to a part of the state).
 - ✓ **Conventional custom:** These are enforced on parties on account of an agreement. For example, an agreement between a landlord and a tenant about the payment of rent is a conventional custom bound by the rent agreement.
- **Judicial precedent:** This includes the previously decided judgements of the High Courts and the Supreme Court of India, which judges are obliged to follow. It is a legacy from the British-India legal system.
- **Legislation:** This is the most important and modern source of the law. It includes the laws enacted and recognised by the state. There are two main types of legislation:
 - **Supreme legislation:** This includes laws directly enacted by the Indian Parliament. The powers of the Parliament are regulated and controlled by the Constitution of India.
 - **Subordinate legislation:** This includes laws that are made by any subordinate authority of the supreme legislation. It is further divided into:
 - ✓ **Autonomous law:** This is the law enacted by a group of individuals legally recognised as an autonomous body, such as universities or incorporated companies.
 - ✓ **Judicial rules:** Under the Constitution of India, the Supreme Court and the High Courts have the power to make rules for their administrative procedures.

- ✓ **Local laws:** Laws enacted by local bodies like Panchayats or Municipal Corporations are recognised as local laws under the 73rd and 74th amendments.
- ✓ **Laws made by the executive:** In India, there are three organs of the state: the legislature, the executive, and the judiciary. Each has specific functions. The legislature (the Indian Parliament) is responsible for making law within the Constitution of India. The executive (the Indian government) is responsible to implement the laws enacted by the Parliament. However, the Indian Parliament delegates some of its law-making powers to the executive (delegated legislation), as it is not possible for it to go through all the details of the law.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. Which approach defines law as a 'means to provide a systematic, predictable system of social order, change and legal reform'?
 - a. Modern approach
 - b. Social jurisprudence approach
 - c. Environmental approach
 - d. Traditional approach
4. Consumer fraud is a violation under:
 - a. Criminal law
 - b. Civil law
 - c. Colonial law
 - d. Procedural law

7.4 ACTS INFLUENCING LEGAL ENVIRONMENT OF BUSINESS IN INDIA

The legal environment of business in India mainly comprises the legal policy, framework and laws in which businesses have to operate. These laws are enacted to protect the interests of both the producers and the customers. Let us discuss the main acts:

- **Indian Contract Act, 1872:** This act is applicable to entire India, except Jammu and Kashmir. This act ensures that the rights and duties arising out of a contract are honoured and that legal remedies are available to the parties bound by the contract. It defines a contract and an agreement, as follows:
 - **Contract:** An agreement between two or more persons/parties subject to certain terms and conditions for legal consideration.
Thus, Contract = Agreement + Enforceability
Example: 'A' offers to sell his house to 'B' for a specified amount. 'B' accepts to purchase the house. Here, 'A' offers an agreement. When 'B' accepts the offer, it becomes a contract.
 - **Agreement:** An offer that must satisfy the following three conditions:
 - ✓ There must be at least two parties.
 - ✓ There must be an offer (proposal) from one party to another.
 - ✓ There must be an acceptance from the other party/person.
 Thus, Agreement = Offer + Acceptance

Table 2 lists the main differences between a contract and an agreement:

TABLE 2: Contract vs. Agreement

Contract	Agreement
It originates from an agreement.	It originates from the consent of parties.
It is always legal and enforceable by law.	It may be illegal, so may not be enforceable.
Every contract is an agreement.	Every agreement is not a contract. For example, 'A' hires 'B' to kill 'C'. Then, it is an agreement, but not a contract, as it is not legal to kill a person and, thus, not enforceable by law.

- **Sale of Goods Act, 1930:** This act enforces the contracts relating to the sale of goods. It also applies to entire India, except the State of Jammu and Kashmir. The contract for the sale of goods is subject to the law relating to the Indian Contract Act. Its features include as follows:

- Transfer of ownership
- Delivery of moveable goods
- Rights and duties of both the buyers and the sellers
- Measures against breach of contract
- Terms and conditions under the contract for sale

To become effective a contract of sale, there must be a buyer and a seller. The buyer purchases/agrees to purchase goods from the seller, who sells/agrees to sell them. Goods must be moveable or transferrable from the seller to the buyer. Transfer of immovable property is not regulated under this act. Price is a necessary factor for all transactions of sale. If there is no price, then the transfer of goods is not a sale. The price normally means money, which can be paid fully in cash or partly paid/partially promised to be paid in the future.

- **Indian Partnership Act, 1932:** According to this act, a relationship between two or more individuals where they agree to split the profits of a business is called a partnership. The business may either be run by them directly or by one/more person(s) acting on their behalf. This act is also applicable to the whole of India, except Jammu and Kashmir. The partners must be the age of majority as per the law, of sound mind and qualified for contracting. They can be an individual, firms, a Hindu Undivided Family (HUF), a company, or trustees. The maximum number of partners in a firm should be 20. The essential features of partnership are as follows:

- **Agreement:** This defines the relationship between partners. If the only proprietor of a firm dies, then although his/her heirs inherit the firm, they do not become partners. This is because there is no agreement between them.
- **Profit sharing:** The partners may agree to share profits, but not losses. Sharing of losses is not necessary to form a partnership.

- **Business:** This may include every trade, occupation, or professions that are continued with a profit motive.
 - **Relation between partners:** The partner that conducts the business of the partnership is called:
 - ✓ **A principal:** He is called so because he acts for himself.
 - ✓ **An agent:** He is called so because he acts for the rest of the partners too.
 - **Duties of a partner:** A partner conducts the business of the firm in good faith, renders true accounts, indemnifies for loss caused due to fraud, indemnifies the firm for wilful neglect of a partner and conducts duties carried out by the contract.
 - **Rights of a partner:** A partner can participate in the conduct and management of the business, express the viewpoints in business matters, access all the records and account books of the firm, share the profits, and earn interest on advance payments. In case he incurs any expenses or losses on behalf of the firm, then he has the right to be indemnified by the firm against that amount.
- **Companies Act, 2013:** This act defines the incorporation, dissolution and running of companies in India. It was enforced on September 12, 2013 and includes a few amendments to the previous Companies Act, 1956. The new act has fewer sections (470) than the previous act (658). It empowers shareholders and focuses on corporate governance. Some of its features are as follows:
- **Class action suits for shareholders:** This is done to make shareholders and other stakeholders more informed about their rights.
 - **More power for shareholders:** Now, approvals from shareholders are required for various key transactions.
 - **Women empowerment:** At least one Director on the Board (for a specific class of companies) should be a woman.
 - **Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR):** A certain class of companies must spend a specific amount of money each year on CSR activities.
 - **National Company Law Tribunal:** The National Company Law Tribunal and the National Company Law Appellate Tribunal replace the Company Law Board and Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction.
 - **Fast track mergers:** The procedure for mergers and acquisitions for a certain class of companies has been simplified and fast-tracked.
 - **Cross-border mergers:** Now a foreign company can merge with an Indian company and vice versa with prior permission of the RBI.
 - **Prohibition on forward dealings and insider trading:** Directors and key managers are forbidden from purchasing call and put options of shares of the company, if they have access to price-sensitive information.
 - **Increase in number of shareholders:** The maximum number of shareholders in a private company is now 200 (from 50).

- **One-Person Company (OPC):** A new form of private company called one-person company can be formed under the new act. It may have only one director and one shareholder.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. Which Act defines the relationship between two or more individuals who agree to share the profits of a business?
 - a. Companies Act, 2013
 - b. Sale of Goods Act, 1930
 - c. Indian Partnership Act, 1932
 - d. Indian Contract Act, 1872
6. What is a key feature of the Companies Act, 2013?
 - a. More Sections (658) than the Companies Act, 1956 (470)
 - b. Maximum number of shareholders is 50
 - c. Maximum number of partners is 20
 - d. One-person Company

7.5 LAWS PROTECTING CONSUMERS, SOCIETY AND PUBLIC INTEREST

Consumers are vulnerable to unscrupulous business practices. They may be exploited through high prices, defective goods, deficient services, misleading advertisements, hazardous products, black marketing, cybercrimes, etc. The government is responsible for protecting the interests and rights of consumers by setting appropriate policies, legal structure and administrative framework. In 1986, the government enacted the Consumer Protection Act, 1986, to establish a legal framework for protecting the rights and interests, and to provide socio-economic justice to the consumers. Its main objectives are as follows:

- Protect consumers' interest
- Promote free competition in markets
- Prohibit anti-competitive practices and abuse of dominant position
- Ensure free trade

The Consumer Protection Act prescribes establishment of three tier quasi-judicial bodies to redress consumer-related disputes, give relief and award compensation to the aggrieved party. These quasi-judicial consumer disputes redressal bodies include:

- **District Forums:** This is composed of a President and two members (one member is a woman).
 - **Maximum term for office:** 5 years or up to the age of 65 years, whichever is earlier.
 - **Minimum educational qualification:** Graduation.
 - **Maximum amount of adjudication:** ₹ 20 lakhs.

- **State Commissions:** These are headed by the retired High Court judges.
 - **Maximum amount of adjudication:** ₹ 1 crore.
- **National Commission:** This is headed by a retired Supreme Court judge.
 - **Maximum amount of adjudication:** Above ₹ 1 crore.

The proceedings before these bodies are regulated according to the principles of natural justice. A complaint can be filed against any of the following cases:

- A trader adopts an unfair or a restrictive trade practice.
- The goods purchased/agreed to be purchased from a trader are defective.
- The services hired or availed of from a trader are inadequate.
- The trader has charged a higher price for the goods than the price fixed by or in force for the time being or displayed on the package.
- The trader has sold goods hazardous to life and safety while flouting the law to display information about the contents, manner and effect of the use of such goods.

The fee structure for filing of complaints is shown in Table 3:

TABLE 3: Fee Structure for Filing of Complaints

Value of Goods or Services and Compensation Claimed	Fee Structure for Filing of Complaints
Up to ₹ 1 lakh	₹ 100
₹ 1 lakh - 5 lakhs	₹ 200
₹ 5 lakhs - 10 lakhs	₹ 400
₹ 10 lakhs - 20 lakhs	₹ 500
₹ 20 lakhs - 50 lakhs	₹ 2000
₹ 50 lakhs - 1 crore	₹ 4000

Note that a complaint cannot be filed if:

- The complainant does not come under the gambit of 'consumer' under the Consumer Protection Act, 1986.
- If the complaint is on behalf of the general public (unidentifiable consumers).

The District Forum, State Commissions and National Commission must decide a complaint at the most within 3 months from the date of notice received by the opposite party, if there is no requirement for any commodity testing/analysis for the complaint. If the complaint requires analysis or testing, then it must be decided within 5 months.

The appeals can be filed within 30 days against the order of quasi-judicial body. An appeal against the order of the National Commission can also be referred to the Supreme Court within 30 days. However, the Supreme Court will not entertain any appeal by a person who needs to pay any amount in terms of an order of the National Commission, unless that person deposits 50% of that amount or

₹ 50,000, whichever is less. Similarly, there is a requirement for depositing ₹ 35,000 and ₹ 25,000 in appeals against order of State Commissions and District Forums, respectively.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. In which year was the Consumer Protection Act enacted?
 - a. 1930
 - b. 1932
 - c. 1986
 - d. 2013
8. Who presides over the National Commission?
 - a. The Chief Justice of India
 - b. District Magistrate
 - c. Retired High Court judge
 - d. Retired Supreme Court judge

7.6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY REGIME

With globalisation and free trade, Intellectual Property (IP) has assumed significant place in the legal space of India. On January 1, 1995, India signed the Agreement on Trade Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (TRIPS) mandated by the World Trade Organization (WTO). TRIPS is the most significant multi-country agreement on IP. TRIPS-compliance is a necessary requirement for statutes, enforcement provisions, and dispute resolution methods related to IP protection.

Under the TRIPS-Agreement, India is obliged to protect trademarks, inter alia, protect distinguishing marks, recognise service marks, periodically renew registration and abolish compulsory licensing of trademarks. The brand names, trade names and trademarks must have minimum standards of protection and efficient procedures for enforcement.

India has various laws that deal with protection of IP. These are as follows:

- **The Trade Marks Act, 1999:** After a wide review and resulting repeal, the old Indian Trade and Merchandise Act, 1958 was replaced by the new Trade Marks Act, 1999, which conforms to TRIPS. This act provides, inter alia, for:
 - Registration of service marks
 - Filing of multiclass applications
 - Increasing the registration terms of a trademark to 10 years
 - Recognition of the concept of 'well-known trademark'
 - Protection of domain names

Section 135 of the act provides legal remedies against both infringement and passing off trademarks.

- **Infringement:** If a person uses an identical/similar/deceptively similar mark to a registered trademark without the permission of the registered proprietor of the trademark, then it is called trademark infringement.
- **Passing off:** Suppose party A has a registered trademark. Party B misrepresents as being the owner of this trademark or having some relationship with party A such that it damages the goodwill of party A, then it is called passing off.

The above actions are cognisable offences and can invite civil and criminal actions. In case of a criminal action for infringement or passing off, the punishment is jail for a term of 6 months to 3 years and a fine of ₹ 50,000 to 2 lakhs.

- **The Patents Act, 1970 (as amended in 2005):** The patent law in India is governed by the provisions of the Patents Act, 1970, as amended by the Patents (Amendment) Act, 2005, and Patents Act Rules, 2006. This act provides for the definition of the invention, which is compliant with the provisions of TRIPS. The criteria for patentability are novelty, inventive step, and industrial applicability.
- **The Indian Copyright Act, 1957:** The India Copyright Act, 1957, as amended several times and the Indian Copyright Rules, 1958, protects the interests of creators of IP in the form of literary, dramatic, musical, and artistic works and cinematograph films and sound recordings, against:
 - Reproduction of work
 - Issuing copies of work to the public
 - Performing the work in the public
 - Communicating the work to the public
 - Making any translation or adaptation of the work

A copyright lasts for 60 years, following the death of the author or the date of publication, depending upon the work type. However, to protect the interests of the public at large, a copyright can be used for research, review, reporting, judicial, amateur performance and education purposes.

Infringement of copyright is a punishable offense with minimum jail time of 6 months and a fine of at least ₹ 50,000. In case of multiple violations, the minimum imprisonment is 1 year and a fine of at least ₹ 1 lakh.

- **The Information Technology Act, 2000:** This act has been established to deal with e-commerce and cybercrime in India. It was enacted to deliver and facilitate lawful electronic, digital and online transactions, and reduce cybercrime. It focuses on privacy issues and information security. Its objectives are as follows:
 - Give legal recognition to all electronic transactions and digital signatures
 - Facilitate e-filing of documents
 - Promote electronic storage of data

- Facilitate e-transfer of funds
- Facilitate electronic book keeping of accounts

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

9. India is obliged to protect trademarks under which agreement of WTO?
 - a. TRIPS
 - b. GATT
 - c. GATS
 - d. SCM
10. A music composer can protect his new composition under which Act?
 - a. Trade Marks Act, 1999
 - b. Indian Copyright Act, 1957
 - c. Patents Act, 1970
 - d. Information Technology Act, 2000

7.7 LEGISLATION FOR UNFAIR TRADE PRACTICES

There are two main legislations to deal with unfair trade practices:

- Consumer Protection Act, 1986
- Competition Act, 2002

You have already studied about the Consumer Protection Act in a previous section of this chapter. **Section 2(1)(r)** of this Act defines unfair trade practice as any practice that:

- Makes a statement (oral/written/visible) which falsely represents:
 - That the goods or services are of a particular standard or quality or grade
 - That second-hand, renovated, or old goods are new goods
 - That goods or services have specific sponsorship, performance, characteristics, or benefits
- Gives any false, untested warranty/guarantee of a product
- Misleads the public on a warranty or guarantee of the goods/services
- Gives false or misleading facts damaging the reputation of the goods/services/trades of another person
- Offers a false gift or prize with the goods/services without the intention of honouring them

The concept of unfair trade practice was also described in the Monopolies and Restrictive Trade Practices (MRTP) Act, 1969. This act has now been replaced by the Competition Act, 2002. **Section 36 A** of the previous MRTP Act defined unfair trade practice as a practice to promote the sale, use, or supply of any goods or for the provision of any services using unfair methods or deceptive practices.

Such unfair/deceptive practices may include:

- Oral, written, or visible misrepresentation about the standard, quality, usefulness and the price of goods/services
- False warranty/guarantee of goods/services
- False advertising
- False gifts, prizes and offers in sale

Although the Competition Act, 2002 does not define unfair trade practices, it derives their meaning from the previous MRTP Act. Section 3 of the Competition Act restricts businesses from entering into anti-competitive agreements. These anti-competitive agreements include any agreement:

- Regarding production, distribution, or the control of goods or services, which damages the free competition within India
- That fixes the purchase or sale prices
- That restricts production, supply, markets, technical development, investment, or the provision of services
- That fixes the sharing of the market
- That causes bid rigging or collusive bidding

Section 4 of the Competition Act deals with the abuse of a dominant position. A business abuses its dominant position in the following cases:

- Unfair/discriminatory purchase of goods/services
- Unfair/discriminatory pricing
- Limited or restricted production of goods or services
- Denial of market access
- Uses its dominant position in one relevant market to enter into/protect other relevant market

Along with the enactment of the Competition Act, 2002, the government established a statutory body called the Competition Commission of India (CCI) to ensure that there are no unfair trade practices in the market.

The functions of the CCI are follows:

- Ensure fair competition and consumer benefits in markets
- Cooperate with other regulating authorities to ensure compliance with the Competition Act
- Advocate competition by educating ministries, state governments, regulators and other authorities about its benefits to the economy

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

NOTES

11. Which of the following is an unfair trade practice?
 - a. Sale of a new dress at a price higher than the 3-month old stock
 - b. Wearing down of the battery of a new mobile phone within one month
 - c. Sale of a geyser with ISI mark after approval from that authority
 - d. Online price of a shirt at ₹ 500 along with a delivery charge of ₹ 600, with the condition that the delivery charge may apply
12. To stop a new departmental store from doing business, a supermarket chain started selling its products at a much lower price. This trade practice is called:
 - a. Competitive pricing
 - b. Hoarding
 - c. Abuse of dominant position
 - d. Price fixing

7.8 SUMMARY

- The technological environment encompasses changes in output, production methodologies, equipment utilization, and product quality.
- Law is established to maintain peace, deliver justice, provide equality, protect individual rights, maintain social control and resolve disputes.
- The main categories of law are substantive and procedural law, and civil and criminal law.
- There are three main sources of law: custom, judicial precedent and legislation.
- The main acts influencing the legal environment of business in India are the Indian Contract Act, 1872; Sale of Goods Act, 1930; Indian Partnership Act, 1932; and Companies Act, 2013.
- The Consumer Protection Act, 1986, establishes a legal framework for protecting the rights and interests, and to provide socio-economic justice to the consumers.
- The IP rights are protected through the Trade Marks Act, 1999; the Patents Act, 1970; the Indian Copyright Act, 1957; and the Information Technology Act, 2000.
- There are two main legislation for dealing with unfair trade practices: Consumer Protection Act, 1986 and Competition Act, 2002.

7.9 KEY WORDS

- **Bid rigging:** Any agreement between enterprises producing/trading identical or similar goods or services to manipulate the process for bidding.
- **Predatory pricing:** A situation where an enterprise in a dominant position exposes itself to loss on purpose or forfeits profit in the short term to foreclose an existing/potential competitor(s) in the market.
- **Hindu Undivided Family (HUF):** A family of members who are descended from a common ancestor, including wives and unmarried daughters.

7.10 CASE STUDY: CONSUMER PROTECTION ACT, 1986

The purpose of the National Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission (NCDRC) is to provide cost-effective, quick redressal of consumer disputes. This case study describes a case filed/disposed of relating to the protection of consumer rights.

In 2012, Jagannath Hirav and Baby Hirav booked a flat on the 60th floor of a luxury project named Lodha Dioro at New Cuffe Parade in Wadala, Mumbai. However, their Mumbai-based builder Lodha Crown Buildmart Private Limited did not deliver the flat as promised. Therefore, the couple filed a complaint against the builder under the Consumer Protection Act, 1986.

They alleged that they had booked a 3 BHK flat on the 60th floor of the proposed building for a price of ₹ 4,45,68,432 and paid a sum of ₹ 14 lakhs separately for two parking spaces.

In 2013, the Mumbai Metropolitan Region Development Authority (MMRDA) granted commencement certificate to the proposed building project for only ground-plus-53 floors and not 60 floors. According to the complaint, the builder demanded additional payment for the 60th floor despite MMRDA's non-permission to construct beyond 55 floors.

In 2015, the builder cancelled the allotted flat of the couple due to non-payment of extra charges. Consequently, the couple went to the Consumer Protection court and filed a complaint to seek refund of the deposited amount and compensation for the damages. In their complaint, they alleged that Lodha did not inform them on reduction in the number of floors and kept demanding a balance amount as per the agreement for a flat on the 60th floor. In this way, the builder misrepresented and suppressed the true and material facts in the registered agreement.

In defence, the builder alleged that the couple were traders who had booked the flat only for reselling purposes, and therefore cannot be regarded as 'consumer' as per the Consumer Protection Act, 1986. The builder also offered to refund the deposited amount or offer a new flat in the same building (on the 50th floor). However, the couple refused the offer.

Subsequently, it was revealed that the builder did not have the permission to build even beyond 45 floors due to height restriction by the Airports Authority of India (AAI).

Result

The National Commission heard the complaint and keeping all the points in mind passed an order in favour of the homebuyer couple. It directed the builder to refund ₹ 2.52 crore along with 9% interest per annum. It also held the directors of Lodha Crown Buildmart Private Limited, Ramandas Pandey and Pranav Goel, liable to pay the amount.

Source: <https://www.consumer-voice.org/real-estate/damage-for-duping-consumers-by-builders/>

QUESTIONS

1. Why did the National Commission pass the order in favour of the home buyer? Explain in your own words the points in favour of the judgement.

(**Hint:** It judged that the builder had duped the customer after misrepresenting the facts and was practising unfair trade practices.)

2. Why did the National Commission dismiss the plea by the builder that the couple was not a 'consumer'?

(**Hint:** Section 2(d) of the Consumer Protection Act, 1986 defines a 'consumer'. Explore the definition.)

7.11 EXERCISE

1. What do you mean by legal environment? Define law and list its objectives.
2. What are the main categories of law?
3. What are the main sources of law?
4. Describe the main acts that affect the legal environment of business.
5. What is the difference between an agreement and a contract?
6. Explain the provisions of the Consumer Protection Act, 1986.
7. Explain the laws enacted to protect IP rights.
8. What are the laws to prevent unfair trade practices? How do they define unfair trade practices?

7.12 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
What is Technical Environment?	1.	a. Cybersecurity
	2.	c. Data Analytics
What is Legal Environment?	3.	b. Social jurisprudence approach
	4.	a. Criminal law
Acts Influencing the Legal Environment of Business in India	5.	c. Indian Partnership Act, 1932
	6.	d. One-person Company
Laws Protecting Consumers, Society and Public Interest	7.	c. 1986
	8.	d. Retired Supreme Court judge
Intellectual Property Regime	9.	a. TRIPS

NOTES

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
	10.	b. Indian Copyright Act, 1957
Legislation for Unfair Trade Practices	11.	b. Wearing down of the battery of a new mobile phone within one month
	12.	c. Abuse of dominant position

7.13 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Meiners, R., Ringleb, A. and Edwards, F. (2018) *The Legal Environment of Business*. Boston, MA, USA: Cengage Learning.
- Tulsian, P. (2014). *Business Law*. New Delhi: McGraw Hill Education (India) Private Limited.

E-REFERENCES

- (2019). [Ebook]. Retrieved from http://cbseacademic.nic.in/web_material/doc/Legal_Studies/XI_U2_Legal_Studies.pdf
- Business Laws in India | India Business Regulations | Amritt, Inc. (2019). Retrieved from <https://amritt.com/services/india-business-consulting/business-laws-regulations-in-india/>

Socio-Cultural Environment & Corporate Governance

Table of Contents

- 8.1 Introduction**
- 8.2 Meaning of Socio-Cultural Environment**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 8.3 Concept of Corporate Governance**
 - 8.3.1 Objectives of Corporate Governance
 - 8.3.2 Need of Corporate Governance
 - 8.3.3 Principles of Corporate Governance
 - 8.3.4 Dimensions of Corporate Governance
 - 8.3.5 Corporate Governance Guidelines
 - 8.3.6 Corporate Governance Models
 - 8.3.7 Corporate Governance Theories
 - 8.3.8 Corporate Governance as a Systematic Process
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 8.4 Corporate Social Responsibility of Business and its Importance**
 - 8.4.1 Components of CSR
 - 8.4.2 Importance of CSR
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 8.5 Social Audits**
 - 8.5.1 Uses of Social Auditing
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 8.6 Summary**

Table of Contents

- 8.7 **Key Words**
- 8.8 **Case Study**
- 8.9 **Exercise**
- 8.10 **Answers for Self Assessment Questions**
- 8.11 **Suggested Books and e-References**

UNM

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the socio-cultural environment
- Explain the concept of corporate governance
- Discuss the corporate social responsibilities of a business and its importance
- Describe social audits

8.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied the concept of technical and legal environment. The chapter also discussed the acts influencing the legal environment of business in India. You had also studied about laws protecting consumers, society and public interest, intellectual property regimes and legislation for unfair trade practices.

The socio-cultural environment includes social customs, values, codes of conduct, beliefs, traditions, etc. Every business is influenced by the socio-cultural environment; therefore, it is essential to examine the environment and make strategies accordingly. Education level of people, values and attitude, work ethics, family structure define social cultural environment. Social practice, beliefs and associated factors are helpful for promotion of the certain products, services or ideas; the success of marketing depends on a large extent, on the success in terms of changing social attitude or value systems.

Business failures and dissatisfaction with the way many corporate functions have led to the global realisation of the need of a proper system for corporate governance. Corporate governance refers to a process of balancing between the organisation, its stakeholders' interest to achieve organisation goals and the social goals. The governance framework is there to encourage and boost the efficient and effective use of scarce resources and equally to require accountability and transparency for the stewardship of those resources. The motive is to protect the interest of individuals, corporations and society. The business firm functions and acts in such a way that it will accomplish social gains along with the traditional economic gains in which the business firm is interested. The concept of social responsibility is based on the idea that a business functions in the society and uses the physical and human resources of the society for its operations, and hence it is under the obligation to serve the society. The concept of social responsibility is also based on the idea that anything good done by a business firm for the society is good for the business itself in the long run.

This chapter begins with the description of socio-cultural environment. Further, it clears the concept of corporate governance and its objective and need. It also illustrates the principles, dimensions and guidelines for good corporate governance. Next, the chapter discusses the corporate social responsibilities. Towards the end, the chapter discusses the components and importance of corporate social responsibilities.

8.2 MEANING OF SOCIO-CULTURAL ENVIRONMENT

Culture is a very crucial part of any business. There should be a proper understanding of the cultural dimensions for taking key business decisions. According to **E.B. Tylor**, “*Culture of civilisation is that complex whole which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, customs and other capabilities and habits acquired by man as a member of society.*”

Customs, traditions, values, beliefs, practices, behaviour, poverty, literacy, etc., that exist within a population comes under socio-cultural Environment. The social values and structure that society admires have a significant impact on the functioning of a business. For example, during Diwali, there is a huge demand for new clothes, sweets, fruits, flower, etc. Due to increase in literacy rate the consumers are becoming more conscious of the quality of the products. In addition, there has been a significant increase in consumerism. All these factors have led to tremendous increase in the demand for the different types of household goods. The consumption patterns, the dressing and living styles of people belonging to different social structures and culture vary significantly. This leads to generation of demands for different kinds of products.

The behaviour and attitudes of individuals and their relationships determine socio-cultural environment. Factors responsible for the creation of a socio-cultural environment include beliefs, values, norms and traditions of the society. These factors determine how individuals and organisations should be interrelated. These factors affect the business to a large extent. For example, the demand for goods and services is highly affected by the factors, such as customs, values, norms, preferences, etc., of the customers

The important socio-cultural factors that have a major impact on the operation of a business are as follows:

- **Culture:** According to the definition by **House, Javidan et al.**, “*culture is defined as shared motives values, beliefs, identities, and interpretations or meaning of significant events that result from common experiences of members of collectives and are transmitted across age generations.*”

The culture that exists within a society or community has an overwhelming impact on any business. It has been an established fact that the culture drives people’s behaviour, innovation and customer service.

- **Language:** Because of diversity, people in different state, countries use different languages to communicate. An organisation operating in different states or countries should have its business communication designed in a way that can be comprehended by the local audience. English is accepted as a universal business language.
- **Religion:** Religion even determines the way people think of work. As a result, religion influences enterprise and its operations. Many companies adapt their working processes according to a religion of a given state or countries in terms of the holidays, working hours, food habits, a way of dressing, etc.

- **Social systems:** The way individual interacts and socialises with other individuals in the society is called Social system. It includes family systems, marriage, caste system, etc. Social systems influence the consumption habit of people. For example, with an increasing number of families, the demand for fast foods and ready to cook foods has increased.
- **Level of education:** Education is about teaching, learning skills and knowledge. Education changes the lifestyle of people, their thoughts and the way of doing work. The level of education changes state-wise. However, in many countries, the level of education has a tendency to increase. The education level and level of literacy of population of a given country are indicators of the quality of their potential workforce.
- **Customer preferences:** With the spread of global communication and facilitated travel opportunities, certain social behaviours are getting similar globally. Today, people around the world watch the same movies, listen to the same music, play the same video games and use the same Internet websites. Apparently, the taste and habits of the population are becoming the same. This social trend is called global convergence.
- **Social institutions:** Social institutions such as family, economics, religion, education and state define the collective modes of behaviour. They prescribe a way of doing things. Secondary institutions are derived from primary institutions. The secondary institutions derived from family such as marriages, divorces, monogamy, polygamy, etc. The secondary institutions of education are school, college, university, etc. The secondary institutions of state are interest groups, party system, democracy, etc.
- **Population growth rate:** The increases in the number of individuals in a population. The rise in demand for food ultimately depletes natural resources needed by everyone for living.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. The way an individual interacts and socialises with other individuals in the society is called _____.
2. The behaviour and attitudes of individuals and their relationships determine the socio-cultural environment. (True/False)
3. The needs, tastes and habits become identical at a global level. This social trend is called _____.

8.3 CONCEPT OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The term governance has been derived from the word *gubernare*, which means to rule or steer. It is a relatively new discipline of management that focuses on the regulation and control of an organisation. Corporate governance deals with looking after complete governance of various organisations with respect to financial disclosures, transparency, legal practices, organisational structure and social welfare.

The discipline of corporate governance is worth exploring because it includes various organisational aspects such as executive compensation, financial scandals, and shareholder activism.

According to **OECD**, “Corporate Governance is the system by which business corporations are directed and controlled. The Corporate Governance structure specifies the distribution of rights and responsibilities among different participants in the corporation, such as, the board, managers, shareholders and other stakeholders, and spells out the rules and procedures for making decisions on corporate affairs. By doing this, it also provides the structure through which the company objectives are set, and the means of attaining those objectives and monitoring performance.”

Corporate governance can be defined as systematic process, practice and guidelines which make sure that an organisation is governed in best interest of its stakeholders and the social groups. Also, it brings clarity, fairness and accountability in operation of the organisation. Corporate governance helps in achieving various organisational objectives as well as social goals as follows:

- Prompt decision making and releasing useful and relevant information
- Full disclosure and clarity in operations
- Adherence to the laws
- Promoting shareholders interest

8.3.1 | OBJECTIVES OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The objectives of corporate governance are the goals that guide the practices and conduct of a company’s leadership in order to ensure responsible, ethical, and effective management. The objectives of corporate governance are as follow:

- **Ensure fairness in operations:** Corporate governance aims to ensure that the company’s operations are conducted in a fair and appropriate manner. This includes fair dealings with all stakeholders, adherence to ethical business practices, and avoidance of discriminatory or inappropriate practices.
- **Equitable treatment of shareholders:** Corporate governance seeks to treat all shareholders fairly and equitably. This involves providing equal access to information, voting rights, and a fair share of the company’s benefits and profits, irrespective of the size or type of shareholding.
- **Safeguard the interests of investors:** Corporate governance is designed to protect the interests of investors by ensuring that management acts in the best interest of the company and its shareholders. This includes making decisions that enhance the long-term value of the company and safeguarding investments against fraud or unethical practices.
- **Fair treatment of the workforce:** Corporate governance emphasises fair treatment of employees, including issues related to remuneration, work conditions, opportunities for career advancement, and adherence to labour laws. This objective recognises the importance of a satisfied and motivated workforce in achieving the company’s goals.

- **Strong internal control and discipline:** Corporate governance focuses on establishing strong internal controls and maintaining discipline within the organisation. This includes effective risk management, financial controls, and adherence to policies and procedures to ensure the company operates efficiently and ethically.
- **Transparency and full disclosure:** Corporate governance emphasises transparency in all aspects of the company's operations. This involves providing clear and accurate information to stakeholders, including shareholders, investors, employees, and the public. Full disclosure ensures that relevant information, both positive and negative, is made available for informed decision-making.

8.3.2 | NEED OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The need of corporate governance are as follows:

- It helps in giving complete independence to the management and board so that they can take major business decision without any pressure and biasness.
- It also helps in bringing new ideas into business and operation.
- It helps in attracting sources of fund by taking domestic and foreign investor into confidence. Corporate governance focuses on building a long-term shareholders' value.
- It is needed to gain the trust and confidence of domestic and foreign investors.
- It helps in operational performance of an organisation by the following ways:
 - Improving strategic thinking at the top through induction of independent directors who bring in experience and new ideas
 - Rationalising the management and constant monitoring of risk that a firm faces globally
 - Improving the decision-making process of the organisation
 - Assuring the integrity of financial reports, etc.
- It reduces perceived risks, consequently reduces cost of capital and enables board of directors to take quick and better decisions which ultimately improves bottom line of the corporate.
- It minimises the probable risks, as a result cost of capital decreases and enables board of directors to take prompt and better decisions which consequently improves the bottom line of the corporate.
- It ensures long-term survival and build up stakeholders' relationship.
- It attracts investors because of it the credential of an organisation are good.
- It ensures commitment to values and ethical conduct of business.

8.3.3 | PRINCIPLES OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The principles of corporate governance are as follows:

- **Transparency:** To enhance the impartiality of business operations, the company is committed to consistently providing and disclosing significant and pertinent information and policies in a clear, timely manner. This information will be easily accessible and comprehensible to all stakeholders, including shareholders, creditors, and other parties. The company will also adhere to confidentiality laws and regulations, protecting corporate secrets, functions, and individual rights while maintaining the disclosure principles established by GCG.
- **Accountability:** Achieving good and sustainable performance requires a prerequisite for accountability. Therefore, the company must be effectively managed, quantifiable, and aligned with its interests, always mindful of the concerns of shareholders and other stakeholders. The company's management and staff must firmly uphold business ethics and a code of conduct in fulfilling their responsibilities and conducting business activities.
- **Responsibility:** As a form of responsibility to the community and the environment, the company will consistently apply prudent principles and adhere to internal corporate regulations in its business activities. This commitment aims to position the company as a recognised Good Corporate Citizen.
- **Independence:** The company is committed to conducting its business independently, avoiding dominance by any party, conflicts of interest, or undue influence that may impact decision-making. This dedication ensures that all company decisions are made with greater independence and objectivity.
- **Fairness:** The company will consistently prioritise and treat the interests of shareholders and related third parties involved in transactions with fairness and equality. Furthermore, in staff recruitment and career development, the company will offer equal opportunities to individuals regardless of physical condition, race, religion, group affiliation, or gender.

8.3.4 | DIMENSIONS OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Corporate governance encompasses several dimensions that collectively contribute to the effective management and control of a company. Here are key dimensions of corporate governance:

- **Structural dimension:** Focuses on the organisation's structure, including the composition and independence of the board of directors, the roles of different committees, and the overall framework for decision-making.
- **Information disclosure dimension:** Relates to the transparency and accuracy of information shared with stakeholders. This involves financial reporting, disclosure of key business practices, and communication with shareholders.
- **Ethical dimension:** Addresses the ethical principles and values that guide the behaviour of the organisation and its members. This includes the establishment of a code of conduct and ethical standards.

- **Social responsibility dimension:** Involves the organisation's commitment to ethical behaviour and contributing to the well-being of society. This includes Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) initiatives and sustainable business practices.
- **Legal and regulatory dimension:** Ensures compliance with laws, regulations, and governance codes applicable to the industry and jurisdiction in which the company operates.
- **Shareholder rights and relations dimension:** Focuses on protecting and enhancing shareholder rights, including the right to vote, receive dividends, and participate in key decisions. It also involves fostering communication between the company and its shareholders.
- **Board effectiveness dimension:** Assesses the performance and effectiveness of the board of directors, including its composition, structure, and ability to provide strategic guidance and oversight.
- **Risk management dimension:** Deals with the identification, assessment, and management of risks faced by the organisation. This dimension is crucial for ensuring the long-term sustainability of the company.

8.3.5 | CORPORATE GOVERNANCE GUIDELINES

The guidelines of corporate governance are as follows:

- **Clear identification of role and powers:** Proper and clear communication of powers, roles, responsibilities and accountability of the Board, CEO and the Chairman of the board is the important requirement of good corporate governance.
- **Laws should be clear and specific.** All the rules and laws of regulatory framework should be clearly specified. This is must for effective corporate governance.
- **Code of conduct:** It is important that an organisation's code of conduct is communicated to all stakeholders and is clearly understood by them.
- **Board independence:** For sound corporate governance, an independent board is essential. It means that the board is capable of analysing the performance of managers with an objective perspective. A complete independent board is needed for the organisation so the members of board members reflect their effectiveness in dealings with other organisation.
- **Board skills:** The board must possess the necessary blend of qualities, skills, knowledge and experience so as to make quality contribution. It includes operational or technical expertise, financial skills, legal skills as well as knowledge of government and regulatory requirements.
- **Management environment:** A transparent, responsible, and objective-oriented framework should be established. This type of management environment implements robust business and operational planning, establishes clear communication system, making opportunities in a manner that the human resources engage with as per their skill-sets.

8.3.6 | CORPORATE GOVERNANCE MODELS

Corporate governance models refer to the frameworks, structures, and principles that guide the relationships and interactions among various stakeholders within a company. These models provide a systematic approach to how a company is directed, controlled, and operated, with the aim of ensuring transparency, accountability, fairness, and the protection of stakeholders' interests. Different regions and countries may adopt distinct corporate governance models, reflecting their legal, cultural, and economic contexts.

Some common corporate governance models include:

- **The Anglo-American Model:** The Anglo-American Model, also known as the shareholder model, is a corporate governance framework that is primarily associated with countries like the United States and the United Kingdom. This model places a strong emphasis on shareholder value, and the Anglo-American Model prioritises the interests of shareholders as the primary stakeholders in a company. The focus is on maximising shareholder wealth and returns on investment. Boards of directors in this model are typically composed of a majority of independent directors. The board's role is to represent shareholders and ensure that the company is being managed in their best interests. There is a strong emphasis on transparency and high-quality financial reporting. Companies are expected to provide timely and accurate information to shareholders and the public.
- **The Continental Model:** Under the Continental Model, two groups have the authority and power. They are the supervisory board and the management board. In this dual-tiered system, the management board consists of company insiders, such as executives, while the supervisory board comprises external members like shareholders and union representatives, with representation from banks that hold stakes in the company also possible. The two boards remain entirely distinct, with the size of the supervisory board decided by a country's laws and beyond shareholder modification. This model places considerable importance on engaging stakeholders, recognising their capacity to support and fortify a company's ongoing operations.
- **The Japanese Model:** The Japanese Model of corporate governance involves key players such as banks, affiliated entities, major shareholders (Keiretsu) with common investments or trading relationships, management, and the government. Independent, individual shareholders have no role or voice. The board of directors typically comprises insiders, including company executives. Keiretsu holds the power to remove directors from the board if profits decline. Government regulations and policies influence corporate management activities in this model. Corporate transparency is less likely due to the concentration of power and the emphasis on the interests of those wielding that power.
- **Indian Model:** In India, there are primarily three categories of companies: private companies, public companies, and public sector undertakings, each exhibiting a distinct shareholding pattern. Consequently, the corporate governance model in India combines elements from the above models.

8.3.7 | CORPORATE GOVERNANCE THEORIES

Theories of corporate governance refer to conceptual frameworks and principles that provide insights into how corporations should be structured, directed, and controlled. These theories offer perspectives on the relationships between various stakeholders within a company, the distribution of decision-making authority, and the mechanisms in place to ensure that corporate actions align with the interests of stakeholders.

Some theories of corporate governance are as follows:

- **Agency Theory:** In the agency theory, the company owner appoints an agent, typically a manager or director, to oversee the company's affairs in the best interest of both the company and the owner. Challenges arise when the appointed individual prioritises personal interests, merely ensuring their basic salary without actively contributing to the company's profitability and longevity. Delegation of power occurs upon the agent's appointment, leading to a separation of power and control from the owner. The agent becomes accountable for the decisions and overall functioning of the company.
- **Stewardship Theory:** Introduced by Donaldson and Davis in 1989, stewardship theory characterises managers as stewards responsible for the company's well-being. When empowered to act in the company's interest, these managers exhibit a sense of responsibility, working diligently for organisational success and the balanced growth of stakeholders. This includes maximising shareholder wealth and portraying managers as stewards committed to the overall prosperity of the company.
- **Resource Dependency Theory:** The efficient operation of any firm requires resources. The firm's directors bear the responsibility of acquiring and leveraging resources, such as information, skills, suppliers, buyers, and social groups, to enhance organisational functioning, performance, and success. This theory underscores the director's role in securing and utilising various resources crucial for the company's sustained operation.
- **Stakeholder Theory:** Stakeholder theory asserts that managers should act in the interest of fostering good governance to enhance relationships and interactions among diverse stakeholders, including investors, workers, board members, shareholders, the general public, regulatory bodies, business partners, and employees. This theory emphasises the director's responsibility and accountability to a broad spectrum of stakeholders, promoting decisions that balance the interests of all parties with a focus on the company's long-term well-being.
- **Transaction Cost Theory:** Transaction cost theory revolves around the expenses incurred in economic transactions, encompassing monetary costs, time, and inconveniences. The company engages in contracts, each associated with compliance requirements and transaction costs. This theory advocates for company decisions that optimise organisational structure, ensuring economic efficiency and minimising the cost of exchanges in the pursuit of overall effectiveness.

8.3.8 | CORPORATE GOVERNANCE AS A SYSTEMATIC PROCESS

The steps involved in the process of corporate governance are as follows:

1. **Establishing governance structures:** Set up a Board of Directors responsible for overseeing the company's overall direction and appointing executive leadership. Formulate clear governance structures, define the composition of the board, and establish key committees (e.g., audit, compensation) for focused oversight.
2. **Defining roles and responsibilities:** Clearly delineate the roles and responsibilities of the board, executive management, and relevant committees to ensure accountability. Develop and communicate a framework that outlines the specific duties, powers, and accountabilities of each key entity within the governance structure.
3. **Aligning interests through policies:** Foster alignment of interests between stakeholders, particularly shareholders and executives, to promote long-term company success. Implement policies that safeguard shareholder rights, define executive compensation structures, and incentivize decisions that contribute to sustainable business growth.
4. **Transparent reporting and communication:** Ensure transparency in company operations and facilitate effective communication with stakeholders. Implement practices for transparent financial reporting and establish communication channels that provide timely and relevant information to shareholders and other stakeholders.
5. **Continuous evaluation and improvement:** Regularly assess the effectiveness of governance structures and processes, identifying areas for enhancement. Conduct periodic evaluations of board and committee performance, executive leadership, and governance practices, using feedback to drive continuous improvement.
6. **Legal and regulatory compliance:** Adhere to applicable laws and regulations while upholding ethical standards in decision-making. Establish mechanisms to monitor and ensure compliance with legal and regulatory requirements, integrating ethical considerations into corporate policies and practices.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

4. _____ is about promoting corporate fairness, transparency and accountability.
5. What does the company's commitment to "Transparency" involve?
 - a. Withholding significant information from stakeholders
 - b. Providing and disclosing information and policies clearly and timely
 - c. Ignoring confidentiality laws and regulations
 - d. Disclosing information only to shareholders

8.4 CORPORATE SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY OF BUSINESS AND ITS IMPORTANCE

All the activities a business does over and above the statutory requirement comes under Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR). CSR depicts that the business has moral responsibilities towards the society. According to **Archie B. Carroll**, “*Corporate Social Responsibility is the entire range of obligations business has to society.*” He has derived four models of CSR. They are as follows:

- **Economic:** Since the firm is primarily an economic entity, its activities should contribute to the prosperity of the economy.
- **Legal:** A company is legally bound in many aspects and it is ought to obey the law of the land.
- **Ethical:** These are certain standards which the society expects the business to do though they are not demanded by the law. Example Avoiding corruption and unfair trade practices.
- **Discretionary:** These are the voluntary contributions of the business to the social affluence like participation in the community development programmes.

The Ministry of Corporate Affairs has notified Section 135 and Schedule VII of the Companies Act, 2013, as well as the provisions of the Companies (Corporate Social Responsibility Policy (CSR)) Rules, 2014, to come into effect from April 1, 2014. Every company, private limited or public limited, which either has a net worth of ₹ 500 crores or a turnover of ₹ 1,000 crores or net profit of ₹ 5 crores, needs to spend at least 2% of its average net profit for the immediately preceding three financial years on CSR activities. The CSR activities should not be undertaken in the normal course of business and must be with respect to any of the activities mentioned in Schedule VII of the 2013 Act. Contribution to any political party is not considered to be a CSR activity, and only in India CSR activities would be considered for computing expenditure.

8.4.1 COMPONENTS OF CSR

The social responsibility of an organisation refers to such decisions and activities which provide for the welfare of the society as a whole along with the earning of profit for the organisation. Following are the components of social responsibility:

- **Towards owners of enterprise:** The responsibilities of business enterprises towards their owners are:
 - Payment should be at regular basis at fair rate of dividend
 - Increase the present net value of the organisation with the help of a productive management system
 - Making the full participation of the owners in the operation of the organisation
 - Establishing the effective communication system to send a detailed and indiscriminate reports on operation of the organisation.
 - Financial doubts should be clarified in a manner so that there is no room for doubt.

- Owners/chairman of the organisation available for the directors or top management for discussing or getting information relating to the operation of the organisation.
- **Towards workers:** Some of the responsibilities of a business enterprise towards its workers are:
 - Fair salary process, security for job, medical facility with family of workers, bonus, etc. are to be maintained
 - Appraisal process is done in a trustworthy manner.
 - A fair-minded opportunity process should be set up within the organisation. This helps workers and employees to enhance their skills and quality.
 - Participative in management, decision making, etc., are to be promoted in the organisation.
 - Facilitating better work environment and social security
 - Implementing occupational hazards policy in an effective manner
 - Trade union leadership policy should be encouraged
 - Management manages human resources so attitude towards employees/workers should be professional as well as humane
- **Towards consumers:** The responsibilities of a business enterprise towards consumers of its products are:
 - Ensuring availability of products in the right quantity, at the right place and at the right time
 - Supplying products of high quality
 - Charging reasonable prices for its products
 - Using correct measures
 - Providing good after sales services
 - Avoiding restrictive trade practices and other undesirable methods to exploit the consumers
 - Encouraging the formation of associations of consumers and consumers' advisory councils and maintaining close links with them
 - Developing appropriate products and services for satisfying the needs of the consumers
 - Taking such measures which would promote consumer satisfaction and welfare
- **Towards the society:** The obligations of a business to the society are:
 - Adopting a set of methods to use resources in an optimised manner.
 - Providing sustainability and economic growth for the society.
 - Facilitating opportunity and amenities such as sports event, eco-friendly goods and water sanitation program for the society.

- Maintaining natural resources through initiatives like waste management, air pollution control system, renewable energy system, etc.
 - Contributing in social welfare programmes by conducting sanitation programs in villages and urban slums, facilitating medical care for senior citizens, women and children, making awareness for skill development, etc.
 - Improving quality of life of the people at large by capacity building, creating employment and providing opportunity to making wealth.
- **Towards the government:** The obligations of business enterprise to the government are:
- Strictly observing the provisions of the various laws and enactments
 - Paying taxes and other dues to the government regularly and honestly
 - Extending full support to the government in its efforts to solve national problems such as unemployment, food, inflation, regional imbalance in economic development, etc.
- **Towards the weaker section of society:** The obligations of business enterprise to the weaker section of the society are:
- Providing vocational training like cookery, tailoring, selling techniques for their economic growth
 - Donating funds to various voluntary agencies and NGOs, which are participated in population and family welfare, literacy and education, development of women and children of the schedule cast and schedule tribes.

8.4.2 | IMPORTANCE OF CSR

- **Optimum utilisation of resources:** Resources are limited in nature. By following social responsibilities, an organisation is expected to use resources in a justified way. Resources are to be used for the productions of those goods and services which are not detrimental to the interest of the society. Organisation is not expected to produce unnecessary and unwanted goods. Production of such goods not only reduces national resources, but also encourages people to spend on unnecessary consumption.
- **Producing goods and services efficiently and contributing to the economic well-being of society:** Organisations are expected to produce goods without wastage. Organisations are expected to practice business process reengineering. This helps the organisation to identify new and improved ways of doing improvement in the product. Product safety is also taken care of. All these factors contribute to the economic well-being of the society.
- **Providing public amenities and avoiding the conditions of slums and congestion:** Organisations are expected to protect the surrounding environment. It cannot handover this responsibility to the government. If healthy environment exists, the organisation takes initiative to avoid slums and congestion and pollution of surroundings.
- Maintain environmental ecology and adopting anti-pollution measures.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

6. CSR depicts that the business has moral _____ towards the society.
7. Paying taxes and other dues to the government regularly and honestly do not come under CSR. (True/False)

8.5 SOCIAL AUDITS

Social audit is a set process of reviewing the organisation performances, code of conduct, and its CSR work report and initiatives. Social audits making transparencies in work-culture of the organisation and its performances. Social audits reduce wrong practices, wastages, and improves the way of working of the organisation. The customers may protest violently, seek justice through courts and press the government to put an end to such unlawful operations.

The main purpose of social audit is to improve the local governance of an organisation, Strengthen the accountability, and maintain transparency among shareholders. An annual statement is prepared that shows the information regarding the organisation shareholders, various social projects, initiatives taken up for the benefits of employees.

The process of social audit involves the following four steps:

1. Find circumstances leading to the commencement of the social audit programme.
2. List goals of the social programme.
3. State how the organisation is going to meet such goals.
4. Quantitatively evaluate what is actually done as against what has been planned.

8.5.1 USES OF SOCIAL AUDITING

Following are the uses of social auditing:

- To indemnify the requirements in accurate manner and helps in making an environmental-oriented work culture within the organisation.
- To make sure transparency in financial and accounting report.
- To facilitate free from harassment and equal opportunity organisational system.

To ensure the utilisation of funds as per the requirement.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

8. _____ is a process of measuring and understanding, reporting and ultimately improving an organisation's social and ethical performance.
9. Which of the following options reflects the main purpose of social audit ?
 - a. Improve the local governance
 - b. Strengthen the accountability
 - c. Maintain transparency
 - d. All of these

8.6 SUMMARY

NOTES

- Customs, traditions, values, beliefs, practices, behaviour, literacy, etc. that exist within a population comes under socio-cultural Environment.
- Corporate governance is process by which and organisation set the rules to govern in the interest of its stakeholders and the people at large.
- Corporate Governance is needed to gain the trust and confidence of domestic and foreign investors, protecting shareholder's interest, etc. for effective decision making and transparency.
- Anglo-American Model places a strong emphasis on shareholder value, and the Anglo-American Model prioritises the interests of shareholders as the primary stakeholders in a company.
- In the agency theory, the company owner appoints an agent, typically a manager or director, to oversee the company's affairs in the best interest of both the company and the owner.
- The social responsibility of an organisation refers to the activities to provide for the welfare for the people at large along with the earning of profit for the firm.
- Social audit is a set process of reviewing the organisation performances, code of conduct, and its CSR work report and initiatives.

8.7 KEY WORDS

- **Transparency:** It is the discloser of all the relevant information to the stakeholders or interest group.
- **Responsibility:** It is the duty or obligation to complete a given task.
- **Accountability:** It is the duty of an individual or organisation to account for its activities.
- **Stakeholders:** They are the individuals or groups who have an interest, influence, or concern in the activities and outcomes of an organisation.

8.8 CASE STUDY: COCA-COLA-CSR STRATEGY

One of the country's leading beverage companies is Coca-Cola India, offering a wide range of rejuvenate beverage alternatives to consumers. In 1993, the Company re-entered to establish portfolio of its beverage brands like Coca-Cola Zero, Coca-Cola, Diet Coke, Thums Up, Fanta, Fanta Green Mango, Limca, Sprite, Sprite Zero, VIO Flavored Milk, Maaza, Minute Maid range of juices, Georgia and Georgia Gold range of hot and cold tea and coffee options, Kinley and Bonaqua packaged drinking water, Kinley Club Soda and BURN energy drink.

Coca-Cola noticed that CSR had to be an essential part of its corporate agenda. As per the company, it was familiar with the environmental, social and economic aftermath caused by a business of its scale and, therefore, it had decided to execute initiatives to upgrade the quality of life of its customers, the personnel and society at large.

NOTES

However, the company received strong criticism from environmental experts and activist who accused it with lower groundwater resources in the areas in which its bottling plants were established, thereby affecting the subsistence of the poor farmers, disposing toxic and dangerous waste materials near its bottling facilities, and dumping waste water into the agricultural lands of farmers. Due to its unethical practices, Coca-Cola get the notorious tag in the world business.

Coca-Cola taking initiatives like rainwater harvesting, restoring ground water resources, sustainable development like recycling process of waste materials. It also outlined the plan for water neutrality for India. Its critics also appraised its initiatives project like 'green' and 'environment-friendly' business operation in India and spent millions of dollars on this project. This case study revealed the challenges to prepare and implement its CSR strategy in India.

Source: <http://www.icmrindia.org/casestudies/catalogue/Business%20Ethics/BECCG093.htm>

QUESTIONS

1. Analyse the issues and disagreement faced by Coca-Cola with regard to its sustainability initiatives in India.

(Hint: Disposing toxic material, lower water level, adversely affecting lives of the poor farmers.)

2. Examine the CSR strategy endorsed by Coca-Cola India.

(Hint: rainwater harvesting, restoring groundwater resources, sustainable packaging, recycling, etc.)

8.9 EXERCISE

1. Socio-cultural factors have a major impact on the operation of a business. Explain this statement with one example.
2. What do you mean by the term 'Corporate Governance'? How will you differentiate Corporate Governance from Corporate Social Responsibilities?
3. In what ways is social auditing useful for the organisations? What are the steps involved in social auditing?
4. Describe the social obligations of business towards its customers and society. Explain the importance of corporate social responsibilities.

8.10 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Meaning of Socio-Cultural Environment	1.	social system
	2.	True
	3.	global convergence

Topic	Q. No.	Answer	NOTES
Concept of Corporate Governance	4.	Corporate governance	
	5.	b. Providing and disclosing information and policies clearly and timely.	
Corporate Social Responsibility of Business and its Importance	6.	responsibilities	
	7.	False	
Social Audits	8.	Social audit	
	9.	d. All of these	

8.11 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Ebert, R.J. et al. (2020) Business essentials. North York, ON: Pearson Canada.
- Tulsian, P. (2014). *Business Law*. New Delhi: McGraw Hill Education (India) Private Limited.

E-REFERENCES

- (2019). Retrieved from <http://www.pondiuni.edu.in/storage/dde/downloads/h1040.pdf>
- (2019). [Ebook]. Retrieved from <http://www.sxccal.edu/TwinningProgramme/downloads/MBA-BusinessEnvironment-Law-1stYear.pdf>

112222

Business Environment of Service Sector

Table of Contents

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Understanding Service Sector
 - 9.2.1 Importance of Service Sector in India
 - 9.2.2 Trends in Service Sector Growth
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 9.3 Banking Reforms and Challenges
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 9.4 Current Industrialisation Trends and Industrial Policy Environment for the SME Sector
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 9.5 Emerging Service Sectors of the Indian Economy
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 9.6 Summary
- 9.7 Key Words
- 9.8 Case Study
- 9.9 Exercise
- 9.10 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 9.11 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe an overview of the service sector
- Explain the banking reforms and challenges
- Discuss the industrialisation trends and industrial policy environment for the SME sector
- Examine the emerging service sectors of the Indian economy

9.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you have studied the meaning of socio-cultural environment and the concept of corporate governance. The chapter explained the concept of Corporate Social Responsibility of business and its importance. Towards the end, you studied about social audits.

When it comes to India's growth story, the service sector is a key driver. Its contribution was 57.12% to India's gross value (at current prices) in the first half 2018-19. The net service exports were \$ 38.95 billion. The service sector in India encompasses a wide range of activities including trade, software development, hotels and restaurants, transport, storage, communication, financing, insurance, real estate, business services, community, social and personal services, and construction services, etc.

In this chapter, you will learn about the business environment of the service sector. You will also learn about banking reforms and challenges, current industrialisation trends and industrial policy environment for the Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) and emerging service sectors in the Indian economy.

9.2 UNDERSTANDING SERVICE SECTOR

The service sector is the producer of services (intangible goods) instead of goods. It includes various types of services are as follows:

- Information technology services
- Transportation services
- Financial services
- Investment services
- Waste management services
- Healthcare services
- Entertainment services
- Education services

The service sector is also called the third tier or tertiary sector in an economy. **Allan Fisher, Colin Clark, and Jean Fourastié** proposed three sectors of an economy. They are as follows:

- **Primary sector/tier:** It includes extraction of raw materials, mining, fishing and agriculture produce, forestry and other tangible goods.
- **Secondary sector/tier:** It includes manufacturing tangible products such as such as cars, clothes, fuels, etc.
- **Tertiary sector/tier:** It includes services such as consultancy, software development, transportation, etc.

As an economy, its focus shifts from the primary tier, through the secondary tier, to the tertiary tier. Developing countries with low per capita income achieve the main part of their national income through the primary tier. Countries in a more advanced stage of development achieve their income mostly in the second tier. However, highly advanced countries with a high per capita income rely on the tertiary (services) tier as the major contributor to the economy.

According to the CIA World Factbook released in 2018, the largest countries by tertiary output are presented in Table 1:

TABLE 1: Largest Countries by Tertiary Output

Rank	Country (Economy)	Services GDP	% of Total GDP
1	United States	15,526,720	80.2%
2	China	6,232,680	52.2%
3	Japan	3,384,612	69.3%
4	Germany	2,530,836	69.3%
5	United Kingdom	2,062,260	80.4%
6	France	2,005,925	77.9%
7	Brazil	1,514,968	72.8%
8	India	1,499,985	61.5%
9	Italy	1,419,619	73.9%
10	Canada	1,151,280	70.2%

Source: <http://statisticstimes.com/economy/countries-by-gdp-sector-composition.php>

The service sector contributes maximum to the business sector of an economy. Businesses in this sector constitute 'knowledge economy,' or the ability to gain a competitive edge by understanding customer's needs and meeting those needs quickly and cost-effectively.

9.2.1 | IMPORTANCE OF SERVICE SECTOR IN INDIA

According to Table 1, India ranks eighth in the top 10 service producers' countries in the world. The Gross Domestic Product (GDP) amount by the services in India was

\$ 1,499,985, as of 2017. Some reasons why the service sector is important to India's growth story are given below:

- **Contribution to GDP:** The expansion of the service sector was largely responsible for India's economic growth since the 1990s, where exports played a major role. After 1996-97, the share of services in GDP increased significantly. From just 1.9% in 186-87, it increased to 6.8% in 2006-07. Today, the service sector accounts for more than half of the country's GDP. Table 2 illustrates this trend more clearly:

TABLE 2: Share of Services in India's GDP Over the Years

	1950 - 51	2013 - 14
Share of total services, excluding construction to India's GDP	28.5%	51.3%
Share of total services, excluding construction to India's GDP at factor cost (at current prices)	30.5%	55.7%
Share of transport, communication and trade in India's GDP (at constant prices)	11%	18.6%
Share of community and personal services to GDP (at constant prices)	8.5%	12.9%
Share of finance insurance, real estate, and business services	9%	19.8%

- **Support to agriculture and manufacturing:** The service sector achieved the Compound Annual Growth Rate (CAGR) of 10.3% for the period 2004-5 to 2011-12. This rate was higher than the CAGR of India's GDP achieved during the same period, which was 8.6%. In other words, the service sector increased at a higher rate than both the agriculture and industry sectors, which was only 6.6%. Significantly, this growth was due to the growth of public services, information technology and financial services. Today, India is a service-oriented economy. It skipped the traditional growth models of manufacturing growth stage and directly jumped from the agricultural growth to the services growth stage. This growth in the service sector will help the agriculture and the industry sectors in the following ways:
 - **Support to agriculture:** Services will expand agriculture by providing better network, transportation and credit facilities to farmers.
 - **Support to industrialisation:** Services such as transport, communication, electricity and banking will boost industrialisation in the country.

The growth of the service sector will also help to generate more employment and raise overall productivity.

- **Boost exports:** The growth in services was largely associated with the surge in the exports. India's share of services in total exports (38%) is much higher than in countries such as China, Mexico, and Brazil, and is close to ratios in the US and the UK.

The ratio is presented in Figure 1:

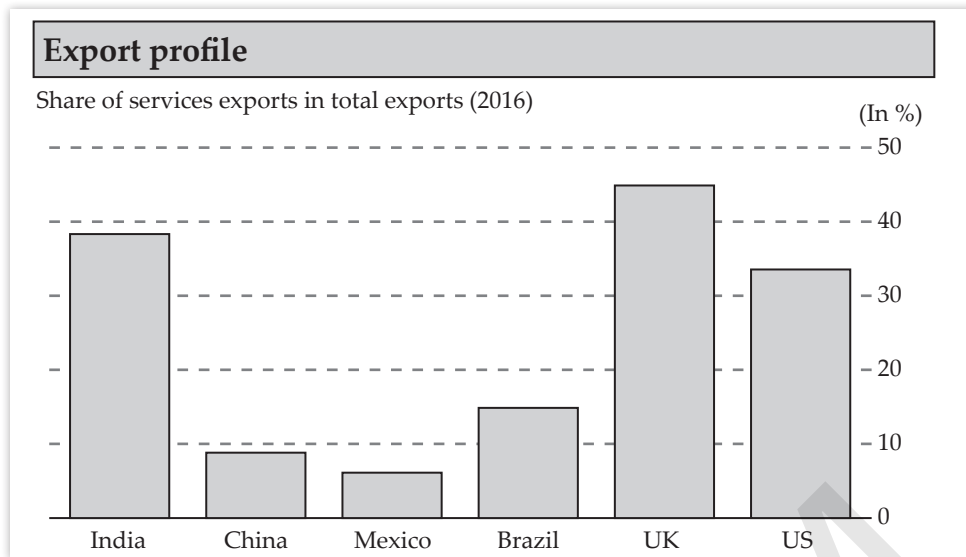


FIGURE 1: Export Profile

Source: <https://www.thehindubusinessline.com/opinion/columns/c-p-chandrasekhar/indias-services-sector-boom-has-failed-on-the-jobs-front/article25540761.ece>

- **Employment generation:** Agriculture is still the dominant employer in India, but the service sector is quickly taking over. From 1999-00 to 2009-10, employment in the service sector increased by 25% as shown in Figure 2:

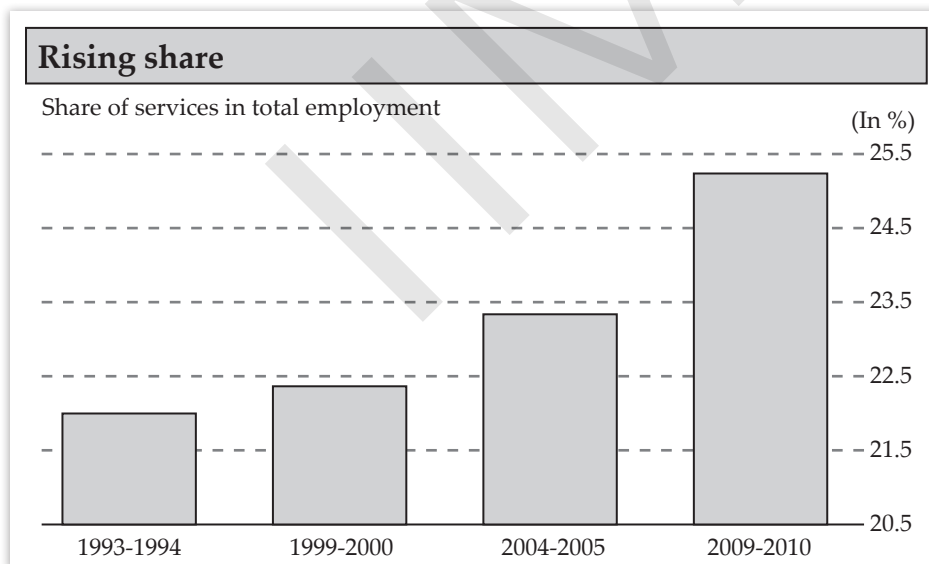


FIGURE 2: Share of Services in Total Employment

Source: <https://www.thehindubusinessline.com/opinion/columns/c-p-chandrasekhar/indias-services-sector-boom-has-failed-on-the-jobs-front/article25540761.ece>

This rise was particularly observed in the construction sector. The total employment in the construction sector increased from 17 million in 2000 to 50 million in 2011-12 (double from 2004-05). Thus, the share of the construction sector in total employment increased from 4.4% in 1999 – 2000 to 10.5% in 2011 – 12.

NOTES

According to the National Sample Survey Organisation (NSSO) report on Employment and Unemployment Situation in India in 2009-10, for every 1000 people employed in rural India, the share of employment is as shown in Table 3:

TABLE 3: Share of Employment Over Three Sectors of Economy

Total Number of People Employed	People Employed in Agriculture	People Employed in Manufacturing	People Employed in Services
Rural India			
1000	679	80	241
Urban India			
1000	75	242	683

Studies further indicate that the employment growth of the service sector in both rural and urban areas is steadily moving from low-income jobs to high-income jobs.

- **Contribution towards human development:** The service sector provides valuable services towards human development, such as health services, education, IT and IT Enabled Services (ITES), skill development, health tourism, sports, and cultural services. These services help to empower and improve the quality of life of the public at large.
- **Contribution towards Foreign Direct Investment (FDI):** A modest growth of the service sector has streamlined the flow of FDI into India. The combined FDI share of financial and non-financial services, computer hardware and software, telecommunication and real estate was 40.5% of cumulative FDI equity during April 2000 – December 2012. If the construction sector is also included, then the FDI inflows increase to 47%.
- **Contribution towards infrastructure development:** The service sector plays a key role in developing, expanding and managing transportation and communication infrastructure. The transport, storage and communication contributed 7.1% (at current prices) to the GDP in 2011-12.
- **Contribution towards IT and ITES growth:** The IT and ITES industries have four key parts:
 - IT services
 - Business Process Outsourcing (BPO)
 - Engineering services, and Research and Development (R&D)
 - Software products

Over the year, this industry has generated considerable revenue and employment in the Indian economy. According to NASSCOM, the IT-BPM sector (excluding hardware) revenues of India were \$ 167 billion in 2018. The sector is projected to create 1 lakh IT jobs in 2019-20.

- **Development of social services:** The service sector also plays a significant role in the development and expansion of some social services, such as sports and cultural services. These are core sectors of job creation and a vehicle of cultural identity. They promote valuable social services and enrich the society.

9.2.2 | TRENDS IN SERVICE SECTOR GROWTH

NOTES

According to a report by IBEF, the service sector is poised for strong growth in the coming years. Some key trends are as follows:

- It has grown at a CAGR of 6.25% from 2012-2019 (at current prices) to reach \$ 1,294.41 billion.
- It will continue to be a major employment provider. As of 2018, it provided direct employment to 34.49% of India's population.
- It will continue to contribute significantly to the total exports of India. In 2017, India was the 8th largest exporter of commercial services. In the first half 2018-19, the exports of services amounted to \$ 38.95 billion.
- It will continue as a major contributor of FDI inflows in India. In the period of April 2000-December 2018, the service sector received FDI inflows of \$ 70.91.
- The key performers in the service sector are as follows:
 - **Aviation:** From 2011 to 2017, the air passenger traffic in India quadrupled from 59.87 million to 117 million passengers.
 - **Tourism:** The earnings in the tourism in 2017 were \$ 27.7 billion, which was an increase of 20.8% on a year-on-year basis.
 - **IT-BPM:** Revenues from the IT-BPM industry increased by 8.38% year-on-year from \$ 167 in 2018 to \$ 181 billion in the first quarter of 2019.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. The services sector is called _____ of an economy.
 - a. primary tier
 - b. secondary tier
 - c. tertiary tier
 - d. quarterly tier
2. Which sector is the biggest employment generator in India as of 2018?
 - a. Services
 - b. Manufacturing
 - c. Agriculture
 - d. Construction

9.3 | BANKING REFORMS AND CHALLENGES

India's financial sector is dominated by the banking industry. It has several structural weaknesses, which cannot be removed without radical reforms.

Indian banks have around \$ 150 billion in non-performing assets (NPAs) or about 15% of total loans. Public sector banks hold a majority of these NPAs. In early 2018, the government injected a package of \$ 14 billion followed by \$ 6.8 billion in early 2019 to help the banks. To improve recovery rates, the government has also implemented several key amendments to the bankruptcy code. However, these reforms are not sufficient, as they do not resolve structural challenges such as:

- High level of government involvement in the financial sector
- Inadequate financial inclusion of a large scale of population

- Wasteful misallocation of capital
- Poor governance

These problems arise because there are two competing forces in the country, which are difficult to reconcile. Out of a straight line, the Indian state needs compliant banks to lend to favoured sectors and finance the government by purchasing bonds. On the other hand, there are capital requirements of businesses and consumer requirements for basic banking.

Let us discuss the structural problems in the banking sector of India.

- **High level of state ownership:** The public sector banks own about 70% of deposits and 50% of loans. Although they are listed on the stock market with minority shareholders, these banks are mostly used as the tools of the government policy. The top appointments in banks are politically influenced. Ministers decide capital allocations after evaluating their impact on the fiscal deficit and other funding priorities.
- **Distorted financial system:** About 25% of loan share is through private banks. Due to the existence of public banks, private banks choose to operate in commercially profitable segments. As a result, public banks have to bear most of the cost of servicing remote areas and unprofitable accounts. This has led to artificially-high valuations for some private sector banks.
- **Liquidity risks:** The deposit base of private banks is not adequate to finance lending growth. Their high loan-to-deposit ratios make their liquidity vulnerable in wholesale money markets.
- **Financial exclusion:** There are still around 190 million people in India who have no bank account.
- **Constrained credit:** To improve the capital ratios of banks, the Reserve Bank has imposed a Prompt Corrective Action Plan. As a result, more than half of the public sector banks cannot expand lending, which hurts small borrowers, such as farmers.
- **Misallocation of capital:** The government prefers public sector banks to grant loans to its business backers and state-owned enterprises, which become NPAs in the downturn of the economic cycle. Multiple governments have been unwilling to deal with bad debts, which ties up their capital.
- **Shadow banking:** It is a term used to describe the non-bank financial intermediaries which provide financial services, such as loans and other services to individuals or business entities. This type of banking is usually related to risky investments, pawnshop and peer-to-peer lending. Shadow banking is widespread in India. As of March 2019, its share in the total loan share is 25%. Just as banks, these institutions use short term borrowings to finance long-term loans. However, for funding, they rely on volatile money markets and interbank loans, which increase their risk. On September 2018, IL&FS, an infrastructure finance group, defaulted on short-term lending and required a bailout. The exposure of Indian banks to shadow banks is also threateningly high, as they have lent about \$70 billion to shadow banks (40% of the banking sector's capital).

- **Corruption and governance:** Since 2018, banking frauds amounting to more than \$2.5 billion have come to the public's attention. This includes the \$2 billion case of the Punjab National Bank by companies associated with the celebrity jeweller Nirav Modi and his uncle Mehul Choksi. The private sector banks are also not doing well. The CEOs of several reputed private banks have exited in questionable conduct. For example, Chanda Kochhar, the former CEO of ICICI Bank (a large private sector bank), resigned on October 2018 on charges of having a conflict of interest. She has been accused of granting loans from the ICICI Bank to a company founded by her husband.

The above challenges require some structural reforms to the banking sector. The reforms are as follows:

- **Full privatisation of public sector banks:** This will allow banks to operate autonomously without any interference from the government. The government will benefit, as it will get cash funds and will be able to remove future capital claims on the budget.
- **Consolidation of the banking industry:** The consolidation of the banking industry will help to remove poorly managed lenders.
- **Reform of shadow banks:** There must be an amendment in the law to reduce regulatory arbitrage of shadow banks. They must meet the requisite standards of capital requirement to the letter and the spirit.
- **Improvement in financial inclusion:** To bring in financial inclusivity, commercial financial groups and private banks may be given subsidies to operate in low-profit sectors. Public banks may be roped in to provide limited services to target sectors.

However, the above reforms are difficult to implement due to the following issues:

- Resistance from all political parties to privatise banks
- Protest from trade unions and employees against deregulation due to fear of job loss and a more competitive employment environment
- Pressure from the government on the RBI to lower interest rates on lending and recognise NPAs

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. Which of the following is a structural weakness in the Indian banking sector?
 - a. Deregulation of banks
 - b. Existence of only state-sponsored banks
 - c. Financial inclusion
 - d. Shadow banks
4. Due to lowering performance and asset quality, the RBI asked the board of a bank to reconsider the fourth 3-year term given to its CEO. Which bank was that and who was the CEO?
 - a. Chanda Kochhar, ICICI Bank
 - b. Shikha Sharma, Axis Bank
 - c. Rana Kapoor, Yes Bank
 - d. Usha Ananthasubramanian, PNB Bank

9.4 CURRENT INDUSTRIALISATION TRENDS AND INDUSTRIAL POLICY ENVIRONMENT FOR THE SME SECTOR

After the agriculture sector, the Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) are the second largest employment generators in India. According to the National Sample Survey (NSS), the sector has created 11 crores jobs in the rural and urban areas of the country in 2015-16. The sector contributes around 31% to India's GDP. Table 4 shows the contribution of SMEs in the national economy at current prices:

TABLE 4: The Contribution of SMEs in the National Economy

Year	SME GVA	Growth (%)	Total GVA	Share of SME in GVA (%)	Total GDP	Share of MSME in GDP (%)
2011-2012	2583263	-	8106946	31.86	8736329	29.57
2012-13	2977623	15.27	9202692	32.36	9944013	29.94
2013-14	3343009	12.27	10363153	32.26	11233522	29.76
2014-15	3658196	9.43	11481794	31.86	12445128	29.39
2015-16	3936788	7.62	12458642	31.60	13682035	28.77

Source: MSME Annual Report (<http://ficci.in/spdocument/23035/Key-to-SME-Growth.pdf>)

The share of SMEs in the overall exports stands at 45% and in manufacturing output at 34%.

Section 7 of the MSMED Act, 2006 has identified three classes of SMEs:

- **Micro enterprise:** A unit producing goods or rendering services with the maximum annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores.
- **Small enterprise:** A unit producing goods or rendering services with an annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores-75 crores.
- **Medium enterprise:** A unit producing goods or rendering services with an annual turnover of ₹ 75 crores-250 crores.

The contribution of MSMEs to the total industrial sector is more than 80%. They employ about 117 million people. They contribute more than 40% to industrial output and exports. However, there is still a considerable unidentified potential in this sector, which needs to be tapped.

A majority of MSMEs in India do not have access to structured finance from banks. This could be because more than 50% of MSMEs in India are rural enterprises in low-income states. Therefore, they are a priority sector to focus on for inclusive economic growth and poverty alleviation.

To allocate funds to MSMEs, alternative sources of financing have been proposed. They are as follows:

- **Factoring mechanism:** Factoring mechanism involves the selling of accounts receivable (borrowers) to a third party (factor) at a discounted rate. This arrangement is very useful for companies who have inadequate working capital and cash flow problems. The company pays cash against the credit sales of the customer and obtains the right to receive future payments on those invoices from the debtors. In February 2012, The Factoring Regulation Act was enacted to promote and regulate

the factoring business in India. However, much still needs to be done to raise its awareness.

- **Private equity:** Private Equity (PE) investment is another way to raise capital for MSMEs. This method is not only easier than the public issue, but also requires minimum regulation. Currently, PE investments in India are tilted towards larger businesses; they still have to gain a foothold on small business investments. Although venture capital funds and angel investors have shown interest in MSMEs, much still needs to be done. The regulatory authority has taken a crucial step in the listing of companies on the MSME exchange. But the market for public issues of MSMEs is in a nascent stage and there is a lack of underwriters to support their PE investments. Another challenge is that MSMEs balance sheets are under pressure due to heavy reliance on debt. They need to shift their focus from debt to equity capital mix to grow in a healthier way. This alternative funding method will improve their balance sheets, increase their capacity to bear the volatile business environment, and make them more flexible in determining the return on investment.
- **Crowdfunding:** It is also known as democratised funding, this is a web-based tool that involves raising capital from various lenders through a social platform. This concept is also in nascent stage in India, whereas it is a major source of raising capital in the US, UK, and China. SEBI is considering a framework to promote, streamline and regulate crowd funding in India.
- **Peer to Peer (P2P) lending:** This is a popular form of crowdfunding where interested investors and borrowers with matching requirements connect to fund a venture, without involving a formal financial institution. It does not require collaterals and offers affordable rates of interest, which are lower than of the banks. This scheme allows investors with extra cash to fund lucrative ventures. However, in India, this funding concept is at its nascent stage and unregulated.
- **Fin-tech start-ups:** These act as intermediaries between banks/NBFCs and borrowers. They charge a processing fee from both for a transaction. As against traditional credit rating agencies, fin-techs arrive at more holistic credit scores, which help the MSME to build a good credit history. As a result, their loan applications are processed more quickly.

The aim of the 'Make in India' campaign is to transform India as a manufacturing hub by promoting exports and FDIs, raising industrial productivity, and improving the ease of doing business. This is expected to create 100 million jobs by 2022 and increase the share of manufacturing sector to 25% in the national GDP. There are two main groups of industries that can be leveraged here:

- Open up and enhance India's traditional unskilled labour-intensive manufacturing products such as clothing, footwear and toys.
- Become a major player as the final assembly line for high-end product manufacturing, such as cars, electronics and electrical goods.

The emerging opportunities for the SMEs in the coming years include:

- Going digital and embracing the e-commerce trend to gain a competitive edge
- Adopting social media, mobile phones and cloud technology to open up new opportunities for revenue growth and operational efficiency

NOTES

- Taking benefits from government initiatives such as 'Make in India', 'Startup India', and 'Skill India' to promote entrepreneurial culture
- Taking advantage of fin-tech firms to get accessible and affordable funds for business

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. Which of the following is a small enterprise as per Section 7 of the MSMED Act, 2006?
 - a. A unit with the minimum annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores
 - b. A unit with the maximum annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores
 - c. A unit with the annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores-75 crores
 - d. A unit with the annual turnover of ₹ 75 crores-250 crores
6. Which funding method involves the selling of accounts receivables to a third party at a discounted rate?
 - a. Factoring mechanism
 - b. Crowdfunding
 - c. Private equity investment
 - d. P2P lending

9.5 EMERGING SERVICE SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

There are several service sectors within the Indian economy that are expected to rapidly grow quite large in the near future. These emerging sectors are as follows:

- **Food processing:** The food processing sector received FDI of about \$ 7.54 billion from April 2000-March 2017. According to the Confederation of Indian Industry (CII), this sector will attract up to \$ 33 billion FDI over the next decade and employ about 9 million person-days. Key initiatives to boost this sector include:
 - 100% FDI in marketing and e-commerce of food products through automatic routing
 - Research in the fertiliser sector with international cooperation
 - Enhancement and development of skills in food and food processing industry
 - Adoption of international food safety and quality assurance mechanisms
 - Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP) and Good Hygiene Practices (GHP)
- **Healthcare:** The growth in the healthcare market is estimated to be ₹ 8.6 trillion by 2022. The average growth of medical tourism in the country is 22%-25%. By 2025, the government will increase health expenditure to 2.5% of the country's GDP. The government's Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana (PMJAY) provides health insurance of ₹ 5 lakhs to more than 100 million families every year. Ayushman Bharat National Health Protection Mission is the world's largest government funded health scheme. The diversified healthcare sector provides opportunities for both public and private players. More and more companies are now getting Abbreviated New Drug Application (ANDA) approvals.
- **Retail:** The retail market is likely to increase by 60% to achieve \$ 1.1 trillion by 2020 due to rising disposable incomes, quality of life and digital connectivity. India's

e-commerce market is phenomenally growing due to robust investment, rapidly increasing Internet users, increasing disposable income, entry of foreign players and positive demographics. By 2021, the retail market is expected to be shared as follows: traditional retail (75%), organised retail (18%) and e-commerce retail (7%).

- **Education and training:** India has the world's largest population in the age of 5 – 24 years. This provides a great opportunity for the education sector, which is forecasted to reach \$ 10.1 billion in 2019. India is the second largest eLearning market after the US. By 2021, the eLearning is expected to reach \$ 1.96 billion. Due to the need for developing skill in the growing economy, education infrastructure development has assumed considerable significance. The availability of English-speaking, technology-educated talent and a strong legal and Intellectual Property (IP) protection framework boost the network.
- **Tourism and Hospitality:** The Indian tourism and hospitality industry is an emerging sector that has the potential to provide a large scale of employment and generate massive FOREX capital. The rising disposable income is a strong contributor to the growth of domestic and international tourism. During 2018, foreign tourist arrivals (FTAs) grew by 5.2% year-on-year, and stood at 10.56 million. The sector contributed 8% share in employment generation in 2018, employing around 41.6 million people in 2018. It is estimated that by 2028, about 52.3 million jobs will be created in this sector. International hotel chains are increasing their footprint in the country, while debt-ridden domestic hotel chains are consolidating to improve their profitability.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. How much FDI is proposed for marketing of food products?
 - a. 25%
 - b. 50%
 - c. 80%
 - d. 100%
8. The world's largest centrally funded health scheme is _____.

9.6 SUMMARY

- The service sector is the tertiary sector in an economy, after agriculture (primary sector) and manufacturing (secondary sector).
- The service sector is the prime contributor to the economy of highly advanced countries with a high per capita income.
- The service sector contributes to GDP growth, expands agriculture, supports industrialisation, increases exports, generates a large-scale employment, contributes towards human and infrastructure development, increases FDI inflows, contributes to IT and ITES growth, and develops social services.
- India is the eighth largest service sector country in the world. In the coming years, the service sector in the country is forecasted to rise exponentially in various sectors, spurred by government initiatives, infrastructure development, rising incomes of the middle class, and increasing digital connectivity.
- India's financial sector is controlled by public sector (majority share) and private sector banks, as well as NBFCs (shadow banks). The sector is riddled with various

NOTES

structural weaknesses that need to be resolved firmly to ensure strong economic growth and avoid financial crisis.

- After the agriculture sector, the SMEs are the second largest employment generators. Primarily based in rural areas, the SMEs have received considerable government interest in the form of schemes and funding to ensure that they continue to contribute to the national GDP. However, they still face a considerable problem in procuring funding and capital. Several new initiatives such as crowdfunding and fin-tech start-ups have now eased their funding options, but they still need to be taken up on a larger scale.
- The emerging services in India, which are poised for a strong growth in the near future, are food processing, healthcare, retail, education and training, and tourism and hospitality.

9.7 KEY WORDS

- **Service:** The intangible equivalent of a tangible goods.
- **Service provision:** An economic activity that facilitates a change in the tangible or intangible assets of customers.
- **Gross Domestic Product (GDP):** The total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by an economy in a year.

9.8 CASE STUDY: SHADOW BANKING CRISIS

On September 6, 2018, India's credit markets were spooked when news of a default by Infrastructure Leasing and Financial Services (IL&FS) was flashed on television channels and newspapers. And they were right to fear that—the IL&FS had a massive ₹ 91,000 crores debt and there was no near end at sight. This case study explores the causes of this financial crisis, which threatens to engulf India's banks and lending institutions.

IL&FS was founded in 1987 by three financial institutions: Central Bank of India, Housing Development Finance Corporation (HDFC), and Unit Trust of India (UTI). The aim was to establish a firm that would provide loans for major infrastructure projects. A few years later, Life Insurance Corporation India, Orix Corporation Japan and Abu Dhabi Investment Authority (ADIA) became its largest shareholders. The current shareholders in the company are as follows:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| ○ LIC – 25.3% | ○ HDFC – 9% |
| ○ Orix – 23% | ○ Central Bank of India – 7.6% |
| ○ ADIA – 12.5% | ○ SBI – 6.4% |
| ○ IL&FS staff – 12% | |

The main reasons for its failure were:

- **Complex company structure:** A prime reason for IL&FS's default was its complex organisation structure. The parent IL&FS owned 69 companies. 135 companies were indirect subsidiaries, 6 companies were joint ventures, and 4 were associate companies. As a result, it was extremely difficult to audit and monitor the company's books.

- **Source and use of funds:** The parent IL&FS company ran up a debt of ₹ 91,000 crores on the back of 'a debt Ponzi scheme', with just ₹ 9.83 crores of equity capital. The parent company would raise debt, which would then be put as equity in each subsidiary. The subsidiary would then use that equity, which was listed as debt on the parent company, to raise more debt. This pyramid debt structure was effective for more than a decade, but when infrastructure projects were being delayed due to sluggish approvals and environmental clearances, their problems surfaced. Infrastructure financing is long-term, lasting for 15 – 20 years. Such long-term funds are available through public sector banks. However, in 2014, when public sector banks started to withdraw funding from infrastructure projects due to increase in NPAs, developers were left with scarce options of funding. The projects were stalled due to lack of funds or got delayed due to environmental clearances. This created an imbalance in IL&FS' balance sheet. The company had to pay off short-term money in the form of interest for long-term loans, which created a cash flow problem.
- **Lack of regulation:** The role of the board, particularly independent directors, was also questioned. For years, they knew that the company had a serious asset-liability mismatch, yet none of them raised an alarm. Even if some of the independent directors had raised concerns, it was not sufficient to avert the crisis.
- **Ethical issue:** Despite the problem with the company's balance sheets, the credit rating agencies kept on giving the investment grade to IL&FS, which raises doubts over their credit evaluation process.

Results

The IL&FS crisis encompasses the entire banking and credit sector of India, ranging from premium banks like SBI and HDFC to LIC. As of now, the government of India has stepped in and taken over the board. It has appointed a new board led by Uday Kotak, the vice-chairman of Kotak Mahindra Bank, to prepare a resolution plan. The solution is being awaited.

Conclusion

The IL&FS crisis brings to the fore three key questions regarding the banking sector in India:

1. What measures could have been taken to avoid the IL&FS default?
2. How will this crisis impact the infrastructure financing in India?
3. How does the banking industry evaluate credit risk in future?

Source: <https://www.xammation.com/nbfc-crisis-case-study-on-ilfs/>
<http://www.forbesindia.com/article/boardroom/ilfs-the-debt-pyramid/51489/1>

QUESTIONS

1. The IL&FS crisis is being compared with the Satyam scandal. Read about the two cases and compare the points.

(**Hint:** Both cases raise concerns over the source of funding, lack of regulation and ethical issues in the Indian corporate system.)

2. What are the possible impacts of IL&FS crisis? What are the solutions?

(**Hint:** Loss of investor confidence, widened fiscal deficit, increased litigation of similar cases in National Company Law Tribunal (NCLT), credit crunch for infrastructure financing, writing up off a large amount plunging the entire banking industry into crisis.)

9.9 EXERCISE

1. Describe the importance of service sector in India.
2. Discuss a few important trends that effect the service sector.
3. Elaborate various banking reforms and challenges.
4. Explain the current industrialisation trends.
5. Describe the Industrial Policy Environment for the SME sector.
6. Explain the various service sectors of the Indian Economy.

9.10 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Understanding Service Sector	1.	c. tertiary tier
	2.	c. Agriculture
Banking Reforms and Challenges	3.	d. Shadow banks
	4.	b. Shikha Sharma, Axis Bank
Current Industrialisation Trends and Industrial Policy Environment for the SME Sector	5.	c. A unit with the annual turnover of ₹ 5 crores-75 crores
	6.	a. Factoring mechanism
Emerging Service Sectors of the Indian Economy	7.	d. 100%
	8.	Ayushman Bharat National Health Protection Mission

9.11 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Ebert, R.J. et al. (2020a) Business essentials. North York, ON: Pearson Canada.
- Tulsian, P. (2014). *Business Law*. New Delhi: McGraw Hill Education (India) Private Limited.

E-REFERENCES

- India's services sector boom has failed on the jobs front. (2019). Retrieved from <https://www.thehindubusinessline.com/opinion/columns/c-p-chandrasekhar/indias-services-sector-boom-has-failed-on-the-jobs-front/article25540761.ece>
- (2019). Retrieved from <http://ficci.in/spdocument/23035/Key-to-SME-Growth.pdf>

Global Environment

Table of Contents

- 10.1 **Introduction**
- 10.2 **Globalisation and its Impact on the Indian Industry**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.3 **Effects of Globalisation**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.4 **Mode of Entries in International Market**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.5 **Types of International Trade Strategies**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.6 **Environment for Foreign Trade and Investment**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.7 **Exchange Rate Movements and their Impact**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.8 **Globalisation Trends and Challenges**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.9 **Balance of Payments Trends**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 10.10 **Summary**
- 10.11 **Key Words**

Table of Contents

- 10.12 Case Study
- 10.13 Exercise
- 10.14 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 10.15 Suggested Books and e-References

UNM

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe globalisation and its impact on the Indian industry
- Identify the effects of globalisation
- Identify various modes of entries in international market
- Identify various types of international trade strategies
- Describe the environment for foreign trade and investment
- Describe the exchange rate movements and their impact
- Identify different trends and challenges of globalisation
- Identify the trends related to the balance of payments

10.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied about the business environment of the service sector. You studied about the importance of service sector in India. The chapter discussed about the banking reforms and challenges. The later section of the chapter described the emerging service sectors in Indian context.

No matter wherever you are in the world, you are touched by globalisation. You may like it or hate it, but you cannot ignore it. Streets of New York or Old Delhi, you will find most of the people in denims. McDonald's is one of the most recognised brands in the world today, serving more than 119 countries. For the first time in the history of mankind, people-to-people exchange has spread to such a vast global level. On one end, they are working together in multinational corporations (MNCs) for shared goals, and on the other end, they are exchanging their culture and viewpoints on social media platforms.

If globalisation has brought people and cultures together, then it has also touched some raw nerves. The free migration of workers have generated a feeling of protectionism among countries and started anti-immigrant movements in the US and Europe. Farmers in India feel threatened by the invasion of MNCs who are bringing in genetically modified products and patents over 'local' plants and seeds. People in the US want to ban 'illegal' immigrants from having access to public services.

There are myriad arguments for and against globalisation, but one thing is certain. Globalisation is here to stay because technologically, we've come too far and simply cannot remain isolated. Therefore, it is crucial that you understand the aspects and impacts of globalisation so that you can leverage it effectively for your business. This chapter describes the concept of globalisation and its impacts, modes of entries in the international market, types of international trade strategies, and the environment for foreign trade and investment. You will also learn about exchange rate movements and their impacts, globalisation trends and challenges, and balance of payment trends.

10.2 GLOBALISATION AND ITS IMPACT ON THE INDIAN INDUSTRY

Globalisation is defined as the rise in economic interdependencies on a global scale. It is an ongoing process that opens world markets and amalgamates societies and cultures. It dismantles the trade barriers between countries and increases the interchange of goods and services across nations. The main aspects of globalisation are:

- Alignment of local economies with global economies through free trade
- Foreign direct investment (FDI) flows
- Flow of capital
- Technological advancement
- Easier global communication
- Large-scale migration
- Sharing of cultural values
- Competitive advantage through easy access to low cost materials and labour
- Investment opportunities

Globalisation of the Indian economy started in 1991 after the Indian government took a series of economic reforms to resolve the severe balance of payment crisis. The Gulf War had just ended. India had to pay a massive import oil bill while the collections from exports were meagre. The total trade deficit was ₹ 17,369 crore. Making the crisis even more serious, India had made high-cost external commercial borrowings and non-resident deposits on which it was going to default. As a major policy change, the government of India initiated a new economic reform called **Liberalisation, Privatisation, and Globalisation (LPG)**. The purpose of the LPG reform was to make the economy more efficient, fast growing, and globally competitive. The government introduced the following measures:

- **Devaluation:** To maintain the equilibrium of the Balance of Payments (BOP), the Indian currency was devalued by 18-19% in the international forex market.
- **Disinvestment:** Most of the private sector enterprises were sold to private bidders to generate revenue, make enterprises more efficient, and offload the government's burden.
- **Dismantling:** The industrial licensing 'raj' was dismantled. At present, only five industries are under the compulsory licensing policy due to environmental safety and strategic conditions. These are:
 - Distilleries of alcoholic drinks
 - Tobacco products manufacturing units
 - Electronic aerospace and defence production units
 - Industrial explosives units
 - Hazardous chemicals, such as:
 - ✓ Hydrocyanic acid and its derivatives

- ✓ Phosgene and its derivatives
- ✓ Isocyanates and diisocyanates of hydrocarbons
- **FDI:** Investment from foreign companies was allowed across a wide range of industries, through an automatic route.
- **Non-resident Indian (NRI) scheme:** The NRI and overseas corporate bodies (having more than 60% stake by NRIs) were offered concessions and facilities for FDI.

Almost 30 years from LPG reforms, the Indian economy stands tall in the global map. From a potential defaulter, globalisation has made India the world's seventh largest economy by GDP. On the other hand, it has generated the highest level of income inequalities in the Indian population. Let's consider both the positive and negative effects of globalisation on the Indian economy.

The following are some of the positive effects of globalisation on the Indian economy:

- **Growth of GDP:** In 1980-90, the GDP of India was just 5.6%. In 1993-2001, the GDP increased to more than 7%, and has mostly stayed at that level on a year-to-year basis. The current estimate of GDP stands at 7% for 2018-19.
- **Increase in FOREX reserves:** In 2001, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) had forex reserves of \$39 billion. By March 2019, they have increased to \$ 402 billion, as shown in Figure 1:

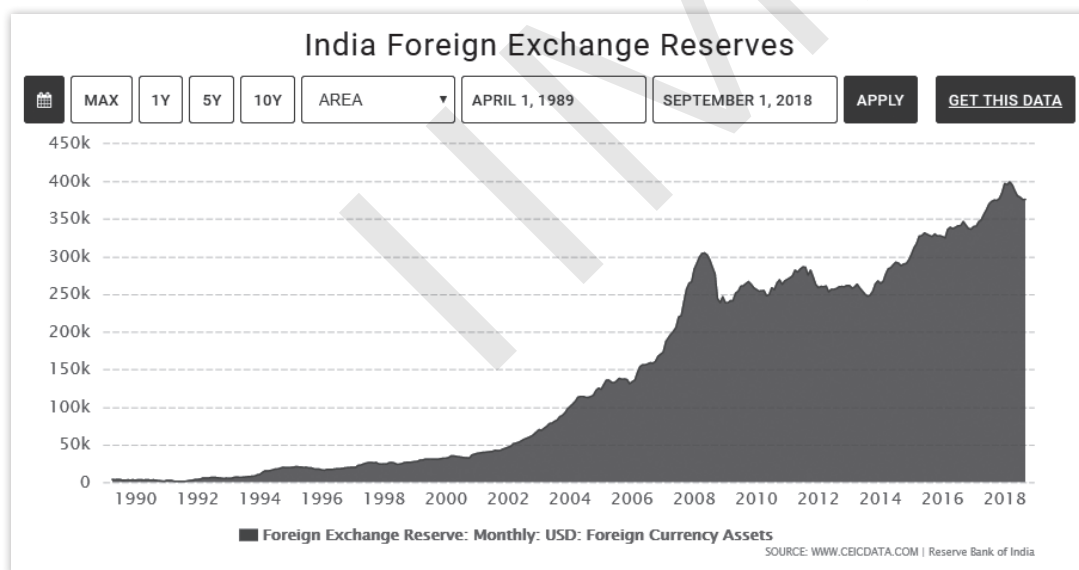


FIGURE 1: Growth of FOREX Reserves in India

- **FDI inflows:** From 1991 to 2006, the cumulative FDI inflows were \$43.39 billion. The following industries were the top gainers:
 - Computer software (18%)
 - Services (13%)
 - Telecom (10%)
 - Transportation (9%)

- **Global outsourcing:** The availability of cost-effective, highly skilled, English speaking, and technologically proficient local talent has made India a top destination for the global outsourcing business. In 2017, India's share was 52% in the global outsourcing market.
- **Market capitalisation:** India is today the eighth largest country by market capitalisation. India's market capital is \$2.12 trillion, which is larger than that of Germany's \$2.08 trillion. The world's top capital markets as of March 2019 are:
 1. US: \$30.17 trillion
 2. China: \$7.16 trillion
 3. Japan: \$5.73 trillion
 4. Hong Kong: \$5.53 trillion
 5. UK: \$3.27 trillion
 6. France: \$2.43 trillion
 7. Canada: \$2.15 trillion
 8. India: \$2.12 trillion
 9. Germany: \$2.08 trillion
 10. South Korea: \$1.45 trillion
- **Billionaires rising:** As per the Forbes list 2018, India has the third largest number of billionaires after the US and China. As of 2018, there are 131 billionaires in India with assets worth more than the public sector undertakings in India.

The following are some of the negative effects of globalisation on the Indian economy:

- **Exploitation of child labour:** India has the largest number of child labourers in the world. As per official records, there are more than 12 million child workers in India. Some non-government organisations (NGOs) claim that the actual figure is up to 60 million. The main causes of child labour are poverty and lack of financial security. After LPG reforms, the child labour has drastically increased, as the role of the public sector was reduced. Since private sectors operate only for profit, the general financial insecurity has increased.
- **Neglected agriculture sector:** Agriculture is the primary pillar of Indian economy. About 58% of Indian population rely on it for their livelihood. The LPG reforms have boosted the manufacturing and services sector, but have neglected the agricultural sector. Farmers' suicides due to debt burden are issues of grave concern. The lack of public investment and the presence of intermediaries between sellers and consumers are the two main issues for their debt burden.
- **Job insecurity:** LPG reforms have dwindled public sector jobs, which offered more security and benefits than private sector jobs. Due to this job insecurity, there is a huge imbalance where the skilled people are more but jobs are less. A single government job for a peon invites millions of applicants, and some of them are even qualified engineers and MBAs. The social insecurity has also increased the rates of crime and fraud across India.

- **Poverty and unemployment:** The gap between the rich (haves) and the poor (have nots) has increased significantly. As of 2012, 22% of its population was below the poverty line. Malnutrition, child labour, and crimes have increased. A large section of Indian youth is unemployed and survives on subsistence wages.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Which period in India received the first thrust of globalisation?
 - a. 1973-74
 - b. 1990-91
 - c. 2002-03
 - d. 2014-15
2. What does LPG mean in terms of economy?
3. Which of the following is a benefit of globalisation to India?
 - a. Forex reserves increase
 - b. Decrease in child labour
 - c. Green revolution
 - d. Job security

10.3 EFFECTS OF GLOBALISATION

Globalisation has brought in several positive and negative effects. Let's explore them.

Positive Effects of Globalisation

The following are some of the positive effects of globalisation:

- **Global market:** Globalisation enables easier access to cheaper raw materials and labour. It also enables easier access to international markets. This promotes industrial growth. Competitive companies gain the ability to acquire other businesses to grow inorganically. They develop strategic partnerships with local players to capture a larger market share.
- **Cross-cultural exchange:** Culture refers to the values and beliefs of a certain group of people that shape their behaviour. Globalisation has spread the American culture across the planet. Before globalisation, women were not encouraged to work in several countries; even if they were, they would do traditional jobs such as teaching or nursing. With globalisation, the number of women workers joining the workforce in non-traditional sectors has increased. Another example is that like the US, most countries have started to understand the value of time.
- **Foreign trade:** Globalisation has expanded foreign trade across the world. Popular brands from the US and Western Europe can be seen anywhere in the world. This has boosted exports for developed countries and created jobs in developing countries. World Trade Organisation (WTO) has emerged as a powerful organisation with far-reaching influences on international trade policies, taxes, and tariffs. More and more countries are depending on trade, foreign investments, and global financial markets.
- **Competition:** Globalisation has increased global competition among companies. Companies are investing in Research & Development (R&D) to develop more

innovative products. More and more young people are confident of setting their own ventures and becoming entrepreneurs.

- **Foreign investment:** Companies and institutions in developed countries prefer to invest in profitable business ventures in developing nations, instead of banks, as it enables them to earn good profits without any efforts. However, defaults in economies in third-world countries make them a risky investment.
- **Advanced technology:** A positive impact of globalisation is the rapid advancement in technology and global communication. The phenomenal expansion of smartphones and their reach to the person at the lowest level of income in developing countries have led to the rapid development of start-ups, which are effectively planning and implementing venture to bring benefits to the public directly.
- **Legal effects:** Globalisation has made people aware about basic human rights. Consequently, causes such as environmental protection, rights of workers, and women empowerment have amassed global appeal and movement. Due to international courts of justice and increased coordination among countries, it has now become convenient to apprehend and extradite loan defaulters and criminals in hiding. Countries are also cooperating to curb global terrorism and block funds of organisations supporting terrorist movements.
- **Culture:** Globalisation has brought together cultures of the world. It is due to the globalisation only that the Indian food has become popular worldwide and Barbie has become the most popular doll in the world. Films, music, books, and other art forms have spread easily through people-to-people exchange via social media platforms. Global tourism has increased impressively, with all countries big or small welcoming people from across the world to visit their countries.
- **Poverty eradication:** Before globalisation, several resource-rich, developing countries did not know how to use their resources. Most of their population was uneducated and employed in agriculture or mining. They lacked the infrastructure to transport raw materials and goods. After globalisation, developing countries learned from foreign investors on how to leverage their resources efficiently. Local populations realised the benefits of education and they started sending their children regularly to schools to make them employable. The living standard of families improved. Suddenly, a lot of people had more disposable income than ever before in their lives. Although there still needs to be done in terms of poverty alleviation, particularly in reducing the gap between the rich and the poor, globalisation has contributed significantly to raising a large section of population above the poverty line.
- **Employment situation:** Globalisation has provided jobs to people in developing nations. Through outsourcing, millions of people in India got jobs and this alleviated a large section of world population from poverty.
- **Education:** Globalisation has increased access to higher education in foreign countries. Now, more and more students are availing student loans to study in the prestigious universities in foreign countries to make them employable for high paying jobs.

Negative Effects of Globalisation

The following are some of the negative effects of globalisation:

- **Terrorism:** After globalisation, terrorism has also increased due to the easy movement of people across countries. After 9/11 attacks, airports around the world beefed up their security. Now, it has become a common practice for normal citizens to be body screened at railways, airports, hotels, markets, or convention centres.
- **Job insecurity:** When companies decided to shift their manufacturing bases to low-cost countries, many local people lost their jobs. In countries such as India, public sector enterprises dwindled after globalisation. Private companies work for the profit motive and thus seek cheap labour. As a result, they short change their employees by expecting them to work for more hours and have a quick hire and fire policy.
- **Price fluctuation:** Industries cut their production costs by moving their factories to countries of cheap labour and then sell their goods at different prices in the world markets. For example, to compete with Chinese products, which are offered at lower costs, many companies in the US were forced to slash their prices to retain their customers.
- **Currency fluctuation:** The US dollar is the currency of doing international trade. Therefore, local currencies in developing countries fluctuate relative to the dollar price.
- **Spread of fast foods chain and fast fashion:** Fast food brands such as McDonald's, KFC, Domino's, and Dunkin Donuts have changed the food habits of people worldwide. Their food is cheap and tasty, but high in fat, sugar, and salt. This has increased the obesity levels among the world population to alarming degree. Fast fashion companies like H&M and Zara offer fashionable clothes at very cheap prices. They are able to offer these low-priced dresses because they get most of their manufacturing done in cheap labour countries, where workers work for long hours in hazardous conditions. The Rana Plaza accident in Bangladesh is one such example.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

4. Globalisation has:
 - a. Lowered the standard of education in the developing countries
 - b. Made the American culture unpopular
 - c. Made local companies less competitive
 - d. Removed poverty to some level
5. Globalisation has provided jobs and raised the job security in India. (True/False)

10.4 MODE OF ENTRIES IN INTERNATIONAL MARKET

A company can enter a new global market through various modes of entry including:

- **Exporting:** It is a traditional mode of entry where a company sells its goods/ services in a foreign land, without establishing its operations there. Exporting can be:
 - **Direct exporting:** In this approach, a company directly exports its products/ services to an international market. This enables the company to have greater control on its marketing and operations. For example, the Austrian energy drink Red Bull entered India via the direct exporting route.
 - **Indirect exporting:** In this approach, a company employs an agency in the foreign country to handle its product or service. For example, the US chewing gum company Wrigley entered the Indian market by using the distribution outlets of Parrys, a local confectionary company.

Table 1 lists the favourable conditions, benefits, and drawbacks of exporting:

TABLE 1: Conditions, Benefits and Drawbacks of Exporting

Favourable Conditions for Exporting	Benefits	Drawbacks
Little product adaptation required in the foreign market	Distribution of surplus	High cost of starting up in case of direct exports
Close proximity of distribution channels to the plant	Cheap, maximum economy of scale due to use of existing facilities	Less control on distribution of products
High production costs in the foreign market	Quick market access	High cost due to the involvement of intermediaries
Liberal policies for import	Control over market selection	High tariffs and trade barriers increase costs
Political risk in foreign land	Safe as it minimises risk and investment	Difficulty in product customisation

- **Licensing:** In this mode of entry, a company (foreign licensor) sells a right to a local manufacturer (licensee) to produce its product or service. The foreign licensor invests its own capital in the venture. The licensee pays a fee to get the royalty from the foreign licensor to use its trademark, business system, and format. For example, Walt Disney Corporation used the licensing mode to enter India.

Table 2 lists the favourable conditions, benefits, and drawbacks of licensing:

TABLE 2: Conditions, Benefits and Drawbacks of Licensing

Favourable Conditions for Licensing	Benefits	Drawbacks
Barriers to importing and investment	Minimum risk of investment	Knowledge spillover

Favourable Conditions for Licensing	Benefits	Drawbacks
Legal protection is available in foreign market	Cost-effective and high return on investment (ROI)	Loss of goodwill due to poor quality maintained by the licensee
Low sales potential in foreign market	Ability to avoid trade barriers	Threat of the licensee becoming a future competitor
Huge cultural gap	Quick access to foreign markets	Less control over manufacturing of products or use of asset by the licensee
Lower capability of the licensee to become a competitor	Utilises the expertise of licensee	Limited license period

- **Franchising:** In this approach, a company (franchiser) sells the right to use its trademark and sell its products or services to a semi-independent local business (franchisee). The franchisee bears the cost and risks of establishing the operations in the foreign market. For example, McDonald's and KFC entered Indian market through franchising.

Table 3 lists the conditions, benefits, and drawbacks of franchising:

TABLE 3: Conditions, Benefits, and Drawbacks of Franchising

Favourable conditions for franchising	Benefits	Drawbacks
The franchisee has good local knowledge.	Safer than other modes of entry	Lack of quality control
Legal protection is available in foreign market	Ability to avoid trade barriers	Lower ROI as franchisor only receives a royalty and not the entire profit
	Quick access to foreign markets	Threat of the franchisee becoming a future competitor

- **Joint venture:** In a joint venture (JV), a company establishes a new company in a foreign market in collaboration with a local partner. The reasons could be to:
 - Enter into a foreign market
 - Share risks and rewards in a specific proportion
 - Share technology
 - Develop a product jointly as partners
 - Conform to regulations by the local government

For example, Singapore Airlines entered the Indian market in a joint venture with the Tata Group, as it was not possible for them to enter India as a wholly owned

subsidiary. Table 4 lists the favourable conditions, benefits, and drawbacks of a joint venture:

TABLE 4: Conditions, Benefits, and Drawbacks of Joint Venture

Favourable Conditions of Joint Venture	Benefits	Drawbacks
Barriers to importing and government restrictions on foreign ownership	Overcomes ownership and cultural barriers	Difficult to manage conflicts
Huge cultural gap	Optimum use of resources of two companies	Dilution of control
Impossibility of fair pricing of assets	Less investment needed	Riskier venture than exporting, licensing, and franchising
High sales potential	Useful learning experience	Less protection of trade and technology secrets
Political risk	Technological capability	Costly venture
Availability of good local partners		Vulnerable to political and cultural backlash

- **Mergers and acquisitions:** A merger is a process where two or more companies combine into a single entity to accumulate their mutual assets and liabilities. The merger enables them to:
 - Achieve economies of scale
 - Avail tax benefits
 - Get synergy and diversify products/services

After a merger, the merging entities lose their previous identities and assume the identity of the newly formed entity.

Acquisition, on the other hand, is the process where a company acquires controlling shares of another company. The acquired company does not lose its identity after an acquisition. The acquisition may be a friendly acquisition (such as Walmart acquiring Flipkart) or a hostile takeover (such as L&T Infotech acquiring Mindtree).

- **Strategic alliance:** In a strategic alliance, two or more companies formalise an agreement to share their risks and resources in order to achieve a common set of objectives, while assuming their independent identities. The strategic alliance enables them to:
 - Expand production capacity
 - Increase market share for a product or service
 - Develop core technologies
 - Use brand image and market knowledge of both entities

For example, Motorola formed a strategic alliance with Toshiba to enter Japanese cellular phone market.

- **Foreign Direct Investment (FDI):** In FDI, a company enters a foreign market by investing in that country, either through the acquisition of a local entity or by setting up a new entity. This mode of entry is subject to the local government's policies and regulations. For example, LG and Samsung entered India through FDI route. Table 5 lists the favourable conditions, benefits, and drawbacks of FDI:

TABLE 5: Conditions, Benefits, and Drawbacks of FDI

Favourable Conditions of FDI	Benefits	Drawbacks
Barriers to importing and licensing	High degree of control over operations	High requirement of resources
Small cultural gap	Ability to serve customers better	High commitment necessary
Impossibility of assets to be fairly priced	Ability to meet competitors' challenges better	Restrictive government policies
Low political risk	Possibility of introducing changes anytime	Lower ROI
High sales potential	Easy mode of entry	Higher risk than other modes
	Better utilisation of specialised skills	Difficulty to manage local resources
	Minimum knowledge spill over	

- **Outsourcing:** This is a method by which a company can reduce its costs and focus on core operations by transferring a part of work to low-cost suppliers in a foreign land. It involves both domestic and foreign contracting as well as offshoring (relocation of a business function to another country).

Table 6 lists the benefits and drawbacks of outsourcing:

TABLE 6: Benefits and Drawbacks of Outsourcing

Benefits	Drawbacks
Quick operations	Risk of data privacy breach
Gaining the ability to focus on core operations, as supporting functions are outsourced	Hidden costs
Sharing of risks	Lack of customer focus
Drastic cutting of costs	

- **Contract manufacturing:** In this process, a foreign company hires a local manufacturer to produce a product or a part of the product. It is a cost-effective mode of production while utilising local skills and expertise. The foreign firm retains the control to market and sell the product.

Table 7 lists the benefits and drawbacks of contract manufacturing:

TABLE 7: Benefits and Drawbacks of Contract Manufacturing

Benefits	Drawbacks
Cost-effective production	Difficulty in maintaining quality standards

NOTES

Benefits	Drawbacks
Small and medium enterprise (SME) development	Risks to local manufacturers
Retain of control over the product and/or process	

- **Turnkey projects:** In these projects, a foreign organisation takes the responsibility of setting up a new organisation on behalf of a client organisation. The client will pay the contractor company for planning the infrastructure, constructing new facilities, and training of staff. After the project is complete, the contractor hands over the new organisation to the client for initiating the actual operations. For example, a Singapore based company takes a contract from the Indian government to set up a smart city project. Such projects depend on various factors, such as the local government’s policies, competition, and resource availability.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

- Which of the following is not a mode of entry in an international market?
 - Licensing
 - Importing
 - Strategic alliance
 - Joint venture
- Which mode of entry enables a company to have the highest degree of control over operations in a foreign market?
 - Franchising
 - Strategic alliance
 - FDI
 - Turnkey projects

10.5 TYPES OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE STRATEGIES

Companies adopt three types of international trade strategies to guide their way across foreign markets:

- **Multi-domestic strategy:** In this strategy, a company focuses on providing specific, tailor-made products and services in response to local demands within each foreign market. For example, the MTV channel customises its programs according to the regions in which they are being broadcasted. Similarly, Heinz offers a no-garlic, no-onion version of its signature ketchup for Indian customers.
- **Global strategy:** This strategy is the opposite of multi-domestic strategy. Here, a company focuses on being efficient. Its aim is to achieve economies of scale by offering the same products/services in each foreign market, with a few modifications. For example, Microsoft offers the same programs worldwide albeit with minor modifications to match local languages.

- **Transnational strategy:** This strategy is mid-way between the multidomestic and the global approach. It focuses on being efficient as well as adjusting to local preferences. For example, McDonald's and KFC use the same business format and efficient processes in their worldwide restaurants, but they adjust their products to suit local tastes. McDonald's in France offers wine to customers, as wine is a staple part of the French diet.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

8. What international trade strategy is adopted by Intel?
 - a. Global
 - b. Multi-domestic
 - c. Transnational
 - d. Local
9. Which international trade strategy is most responsive to local preferences and tastes?
 - a. Local
 - b. Global
 - c. Multi-domestic
 - d. Transnational

10.6 ENVIRONMENT FOR FOREIGN TRADE AND INVESTMENT

A favourable environment must be developed and sustained for FDI. Factors to consider include:

- **Clear investment policy and regulations:** The FDI policy should be transparent, protective of investors' property, and non-discriminatory. There should be minimum discriminatory restrictions. Whatever restrictions are there, they should be transparent and clear. They should be periodically evaluated to determine their cost-benefit ratio. The process of screening investment proposals should be transparent and efficient.
- **Good law enforcement:** Good laws must be developed and enforced to protect intellectual property (IP), enforce contracts, and resolve disputes. The host country should also have adequate, timely, and effective methods of registering property ownership. Finally, the domestic legal system should have sufficient capacity to take up litigation and dispute related matters and settle them on a timely manner.
- **Sustainable environment:** As important as it is to attract foreign trade and investment, it is equally important to sustain them in the long run and use it for the country's development. This can be done by promoting innovation and export growth through special economic zones (SEZs) and industrial parks. There should be a single window with a single-point authority. It is also important to follow up with investors after they have established facilities and troubleshoot their problems. There should be coordination among authorities for export promotion,

NOTES

business registration, or land allocation for businesses. Their performance should be frequently evaluated.

- **Incentive planning:** Most countries use tax incentives to attract FDI, without paying attention to whether FDI inflows are proportionally increasing as a result of these incentives. These incentives should be carefully planned so that any chances of corruption are avoided. The governments should also promote linkages between foreign players and domestic players.
- **Infrastructure development:** Infrastructure is a major reason for attracting FDI. There should be a clear and fair policy for both public and private providers of infrastructure services. Private players should be encouraged to play a greater role in infrastructure development, as they are more efficient than public units. The regulatory framework for infrastructure investment should be transparent and have enough safety provisions to address risky long-term investments.
- **Synergy between trade and investment:** To promote both exports and improve FDI inflows, countries should coordinate and align their trade and investment strategies. The common structural bottlenecks should be removed. The export sectors and destination markets should be diversified. Investments should be made for developing and enhancing human resource skills. Excess red tape for investors should be removed. The supply of labour should be aligned with demand and forecasted for long-term by focusing on a few key market areas that offer long term potential.
- **Responsible business conduct:** Finally, there should be strong, regulatory and institutional frameworks to foster responsible business conduct among businesses.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

10. Which step will help promote FDI inflow in a country?
 - a. Long judicial proceedings
 - b. Less red-tapism
 - c. Preferential policies for specific countries
 - d. Multiple windows with multiple authorities for approval
11. Fuzzy tax incentives may mostly lead to:

a. IP rights violation	b. Crony capitalism
c. Data theft	d. Corruption

10.7 EXCHANGE RATE MOVEMENTS AND THEIR IMPACT

Suppose you need to travel to New York. Before you travel, you go to a forex dealer to get the US currency and pay a specific amount of Indian rupees in exchange. The exchange rate is the rate at which the Indian rupees will exchange for the US dollar.

The exchange rate of currency changes daily depending on various factors. Before you learn about these factors, you should realise the importance of the exchange rate movements on a country's foreign trade.

Table 8 illustrates this relationship:

TABLE 8: Effect of Currency Value on Country's Imports, Exports & Balance of Trade

Currency value	Effect on imports	Effect on exports
High, e.g., US Dollar, GBP Sterling, Euro	Less expensive for the country	More expensive in foreign markets
Low, e.g., INR	More expensive for the country	Cheaper in foreign markets

The difference between the value of imports and that of exports in a given period determines the company's balance of trade. A higher exchange rate for a country deteriorates its balance of trade, while a lower exchange rate improves it.

The factors determining the exchange rate between countries are:

- **Differences in inflation:** If a country has a steadily lower inflation rate, then its currency will have a higher value. This will increase the purchasing power of the currency with respect to other currencies. For example, Japan has a consistently lower rate of inflation and thus the Japanese Yen has a higher purchasing power.
- **Differences in interest rates:** You may have heard about the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) changing the interest rates to control inflation. These changes in interest rates lower the value of INR. When the Fed keeps the interest rates high in the US, lenders get better returns. Thus, higher interest rates attract investment and raise the value of the dollar.
- **Current account deficits:** India and the US are trading partners. The balance of trade between India and the US is called the current account. This current account will include all the payments between India and the US for goods, services, interests, and dividends. If there is a deficit in the current account, then it means that India is spending more on foreign trade with the US than it is earning. In other words, India needs more US dollars that it receives through exports, and it supplies more Indian rupees than the US demands for its products. This extra demand for the US dollar lowers the value of INR, until domestic goods are cheap enough for the US citizens and foreign assets are too expensive for the Indians.
- **Public debt:** To stimulate the Indian economy, sometimes the Indian government offers a stimulus package to provide large-scale deficit financing for public sector projects. However, this may not generate an adequate response from foreign investors if the public deficit and debt are high. This is because the inflation rate will be very high due to debt. If inflation is high, then the debt will be eventually paid off with cheaper US dollars. In the worst case scenario, the Indian government has also printed money to pay part of a large debt. However, this increase in the money supply also causes inflation. If the government is still not able to pay its deficit, then it must increase the supply of securities for sale to foreign investors to lower their prices. However, if the risk of defaulting is evident, then foreign investors will not purchase securities too. Therefore, the debt rating of a country by rating agencies such as Moody's or Standard & Poor's is a key factor in determining the exchange rate.

- **Terms of trade:** This is a ratio of a country's exports prices and its imports prices. If the country's exports prices increase at a greater rate than that of its imports, then the terms of trade are favourable. This means that the country's exports are in greater demand, which increases the revenue generated from them. This, in turn, will increase the demand for that country's currency and increase its exchange rate. On the other hand, if the country's imports prices increase at a greater rate than that of its exports, then its currency's value will decline.
- **Political stability and economic performance:** Foreign investors are likely to invest more in politically stable countries with good economic performance. If there is political chaos, such as in Venezuela, then the investors will lose confidence in its currency and the value of the currency will reach the bottom. As of 2018, Venezuela is grappling with hyperinflation of 1,000,000% (IMF report).

In conclusion, the exchange rate of a country determines its purchasing power, interest, rates, inflation, and capital gains from domestic securities. Let's understand the impacts of exchange rate movements:

- **Impact on inflation:** The exchange rate movement affects inflation by:
 - Changing the prices of imported goods and services. This directly raises the consumer price index. For example, a reduction in the exchange rate will generally increase the price of imported goods.
 - Changing the price of commodities, such as oil. A weaker INR will increase the price of crude oil, as it is traded in the dollar.
 - Changing the growth of exports. For example, if the exchange rate of INR is high, then it increases the prices of exports. On the other hand, if the INR weakens, then the Indian exports become cheaper.
- **Impact on unemployment:** Rise in the exchange rate will reduce net exports and increase the demand for imports. If the demand and output are low, then businesses will try to control their costs. To do so, they may cut jobs. Some job losses are temporary. However, if imports are permanently higher than exports, then job losses will be more permanent in nature.
- **Impact on recession:** Sometimes when an economy is in recession, its currency is depreciated (its value is decreased in the free market) to stimulate demand, increase output, and create jobs. This will improve the balance of trade by driving higher export sales and widening of output in industries (particularly exporters). This effect is called the supply chain effect.

A cheaper currency has some downsides also. For one thing, investors may lose confidence in a weakened currency and may take away their capital (capital flight). This will make it tough for the government to finance budget deficits and trade deficits. The cost of imports will be higher than the revenues from exports. This may cause inflationary risks.

- **Impact on balance of payments adjustments:** A short-term depreciation may not be beneficial to improve the BOP because of the low price elasticity of demand for imports and exports in the short term. In the beginning, there will not be any change in the number of imports as their contracts have already been signed. However, the demand for exports will be inelastic with the exchange rate movement. The

net earnings from exports may be inadequate to compensate for higher spending on imports. This may further deteriorate the BOP. This phenomenon is called the J curve effect, as shown in Figure 2:

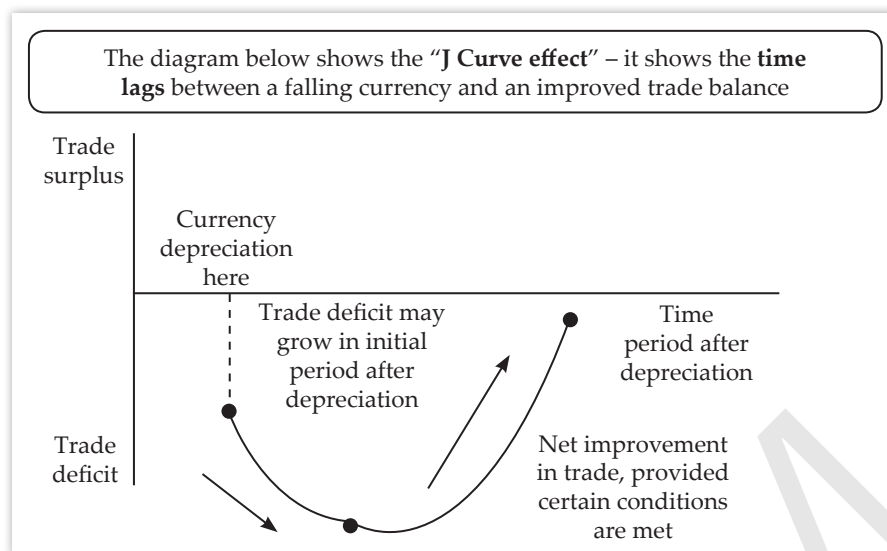


FIGURE 2: J Curve Effect

Source: <https://www.tutor2u.net/economics/reference/exchange-rates-macroeconomic-effects-of-currency-fluctuations>

With time, the trade balance will improve because the elasticity of demand for imports and exports is more than one. This effect is called the Marshall-Lerner condition.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

12. Which factor will raise the exchange rate value of the INR relative to the US Dollar?
 - a. Inflation in India is high at 10%
 - b. The country is running trade surplus
 - c. The RBI has lowered the interest rates
 - d. The export prices are increasing at a higher rate than the imports prices
13. Which of the following is a benefit of a weaker currency?
 - a. Improved balance of trade
 - b. Capital flight
 - c. Higher cost of imports
 - d. Higher agricultural output

10.8 GLOBALISATION TRENDS AND CHALLENGES

Globalisation has significantly affected people and communities around the world. With technology advancements and increased mobility, globalisation has enabled several economies to touch new heights, but in the process, it has irreversibly

NOTES

impacted societies and natural environment. Over the last 30 years, the world has undergone massive transformation. From \$ 50 trillion in 2000, the world GDP has grown to \$ 75 trillion in 2016. The gap between the rich and the poor has increased tremendously. In 2017, 82% of the global wealth goes to the richest 1% people in the world (Oxfam report).

If globalisation has to sustain its momentum, then it has to overcome such challenges. In general, there are three major trends:

- **Shifts in production and labour markets:** This trend explains how changes in production, such as through outsourcing and mechanisation, have impacted the labour markets globally and resulted in job losses. This trend is related with the increasing gap between rich and poor.
- **Quick technology advancements:** This trend refers to the rapid technology advancements in IT, communication, and artificial intelligence. Although these technologies will pave way for sustainable development, there is a threat for countries that cannot afford them of being left out.
- **Climate change:** Economic activity, changes in lifestyle, and growing urbanisation have adversely affected the natural environment. The climate change problem needs to be addressed globally.

There are three main challenges to globalisation:

- **Job mobility:** The largescale shifting of jobs, particularly manufacturing jobs, from developed countries to developing countries has made globalisation highly unpopular politically and culturally. Lower-skilled workers in developed countries who lose their jobs often find it difficult to find alternative employment, which compensates them equally. This also adds a burden on the social welfare system of those countries. Due to fewer jobs, less tax is collected, which is required for funding the social welfare systems.
- **Dominance of the West:** Western Europe and the US continue to dominate the international order, despite the rise of China and BRICS. For instance, the heads of the IMF and the World Bank are either from the US or from the European Union (EU). However, if western values are forcibly imposed, they may lead to disastrous results, such as the fall of Arab leaders during the Arab Spring who were propped up by the Western countries.
- **Cultural identity loss:** Although globalisation has made it easier for people to share cultural values, it has also led to the destruction of traditional values in various societies. The American culture has emerged as a dominant culture with young people around the world copying their lifestyles, food preferences, and consumer behaviour. This has shifted the savings balance of several societies, which have been traditionally frugal and conservative.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

14. Which of the following is a mega-trend of globalisation?
 - a. Shifts in the production and labour market
 - b. Easy access to foreign culture

- c. Improved lifestyle
 - d. Cheaper goods and services
15. Samantha Nash in the US lost her job in a car-manufacturing plant because her company shifted the plant to Mexico. Which globalisation challenge is this?
- a. Shift in technology
 - b. Job mobility
 - c. Eroding cultural value
 - d. Climate change

10.9 BALANCE OF PAYMENTS TRENDS

The Balance of Payments (BOP) is a statement that summarises all the international transactions conducted by the residents of a country, involving:

- Goods, services and income
- Financial claims on and liabilities to the rest of the world
- One-sided transactions or transfers (such as gifts)

The BOP helps to determine how much financial capital has flown out of a country and how much capital has come inside. It is prepared on a quarterly and annual basis in the domestic currency of the country. It has the following four components:

- **Current account:** This includes all imports and exports of goods and services, income receipts and payments from investments, and one-sided transfers of foreign aid. In a current account, if the amount of debits (imports) is more than the credits (exports), then the country is in a trade deficit. In a contrary situation (imports>exports), the country is running a trade surplus.
- **Capital account:** This account determines the net difference between the sales of assets of a country to foreign investors and the country's purchase of foreign assets. It includes FDI, portfolio and other investments.
- **Official reserves account:** This account includes gold, foreign currencies, and special drawing rights (SDRs). SDRs are reserve positions with the IMF.
- **Statistical discrepancy:** This includes the entries made to balance omissions and inaccurate transactions in the BOP.

The BOP is recorded in a double entry system, where all transactions are debit or credit transactions, as illustrated in Table 9:

TABLE 9: Debit and Credit Transactions In BOP

Debit (Payments to foreigners)	Credit (Receipts of payments from foreigners)
Imports of goods	Exports of goods
Transportation and travel expenses	Transportation and travel receipts
Income paid on investments of foreigners	Income received from investments made in foreign lands
Gifts to foreign residents	Gifts received from foreign residents or non-resident domestic people

NOTES

Debit (Payments to foreigners)	Credit (Receipts of payments from foreigners)
Aid given by the country to foreign nations	Aid received from foreign governments
Overseas investments by residents	

For each credit transaction in the BOP, there must be a balancing debit transaction, and vice versa (double entry system condition). Thus, the current and capital accounts must sum to be 0 for maintaining equilibrium in the BOP. However, the BOP's equilibrium can be disturbed due to the following factors:

- **Economic factors:** Imbalance between exports and imports, huge development expenditure, etc.
- **Political factors:** Restrictive imports policy, such as anti-dumping duty
- **Social factors:** Changes in lifestyles and consumer tastes, which imbalance imports and exports

To restore the equilibrium of the BOP, the following measures should be taken:

- Promotion of exports by granting sufficient rewards to manufacturer and exporters
- Discouraging imports through import substitution and reasonable tariffs
- Reducing inflation
- Controlling the exchange rates by asking all exporters to surrender their FOREX to the central bank and then rationing the FOREX to licensed importers
- Devaluating the domestic currency in case of the fixed exchange rate
- Depreciating the domestic currency in the free market system

Figure 3 displays India's BOP in Q3 of 2017-18:

	(US\$ Billion)											
	October-December 2017 P			October-December 2016			April-December 2017-18 P			April-December 2016-17		
	Credit	Debit	Net	Credit	Debit	Net	Credit	Debit	Net	Credit	Debit	Net
A. Current Account	150.1	163.6	-13.5	130.2	138.1	-8.0	435.6	471.3	-35.6	382.8	394.6	-11.8
1. Goods	77.5	121.6	-44.1	68.8	102.0	-33.3	226.8	345.6	-118.9	202.8	285.5	-82.7
of which:												
POL	9.9	29.2	-19.3	8.1	21.8	-13.7	26.5	75.8	-49.2	22.5	61.3	-38.8
2. Services	50.0	29.0	20.9	42.1	24.4	17.8	143.3	85.7	57.6	122.4	72.6	49.8
3. Primary Income	4.9	11.3	-6.4	4.0	10.4	-6.4	14.3	34.9	-20.6	11.8	32.5	-20.7
4. Secondary Income	17.7	1.6	16.1	15.3	1.4	13.9	51.3	5.1	46.3	45.8	4.0	41.8
B. Capital Account and Financial Account	168.8	156.2	12.6	138.7	131.4	7.3	470.9	437.0	33.9	406.8	395.0	11.8
of which:												
Change in Reserve (Increase (-)/Decrease (+))	0.0	9.4	-9.4	1.2	0.0	1.2	0.0	30.3	-30.3	1.2	15.5	-14.2
C. Errors & Omissions (-) (A+B)	0.8		0.8	0.7		0.7	1.8		1.8	0.0	0.01	-0.01
P: Preliminary												
Note: Total of subcomponents may not tally with the aggregate due to rounding off.												

FIGURE 3: BOP in Q3 of 2017-18

Source: https://www.rbi.org.in/scripts/BS_PressReleaseDisplay.aspx?prid=43403

The main trends of BOP are:

- Increase in the current account deficit (CAD) (from \$ 8 billion in Q3 2016-17 to \$ 13.5 billion in 2018-19)

- Increase in the trade deficit (\$44.1 billion) due to the higher value of imports of goods than exports
- Increase in the net services receipts (\$17.8 billion in Q3 2016-17 to \$20.9 billion in Q3 2017-18) due to an increase in net earnings from software services and travel receipts
- Increase in private transfer receipts and remittances by Indians employed overseas (\$17.6 billion)
- Decrease in the net FDI in the financial account (\$ 9.7 billion in Q3 2016-17 to \$ 4.3 billion in Q3 2017-18)
- Net inflow in portfolio investment (\$ 5.3 billion in Q3 of 2017-18) due to net purchases in both debt and equity markets, relative to net outflow (\$11.3 billion) in Q3 last year
- Net receipts of NRI deposits (\$3.1 billion in Q3 of 2017-18) relative to net repayments (\$18.5 billion) in Q3 last year
- Increase of \$ 9.4 billion in FOREX reserves compared to depletion of \$ 1.2 billion in Q3 of 2016-17

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

16. The BOP summarises all the _____ transactions of the residents of a country.
- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| a. Personal | b. Public |
| c. Commercial | d. International |
17. Which component of BOP determines the net difference between the sales of a country's assets and the country's purchase of foreign assets?
- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a. Current account | b. Capital account |
| c. Official reserves account | d. Statistical discrepancy |

10.10 SUMMARY

- Globalisation is the rise in economic interdependencies in the world. It is an ongoing process of increasing openness of world markets and amalgamation of societies and cultures.
- Globalisation started in India after LPG reforms in 1990-91. It has been responsible for the growth of the GDP, rise in FOREX reserves, increased FDI inflows, global outsourcing opportunities, increased market capitalisation, and rise of billionaires. However, it has also led to rising cases of child labour, less agricultural output, farmers' suicides, job insecurity, and poverty and unemployment.
- Globalisation has created a global market, facilitated cross-cultural exchange, promoted foreign trade and fair competition, increased FDI, advanced technology usage, brought in awareness of legal rights, alleviated poverty, increased jobs in developing countries, and promoted education. On the flip side, it has also led

NOTES

to the rise of terrorism, job insecurity, price and currency fluctuation, and rise in obesity.

- The various modes of entries in international markets are exporting, licensing, franchising, joint venture, mergers and acquisitions, strategic alliance, FDI, outsourcing, contract manufacturing, and turnkey projects.
- There are three types of international trade strategies: Multidomestic, global, and transnational.
- The environment for foreign trade and investment requires a clear investment policy and transparent regulations, good law development and enforcement, carefully planned incentives, infrastructure, synergy between trade and investment, and responsible business conduct.
- The exchange rate depends on the differences in inflation and interest rates, current account deficits, public debt, terms of trade, political stability, and economic performance.
- The three major trends in globalisation are shifts in production and labour markets, quick technology movements, and climate change.
- The challenges to globalisation are job mobility, dominance of the West, and cultural identity loss.
- The BOP provides the economic transactions of a country with the rest of the world over a specified period. It is a double entry system made up of the current account, capital account, official reserves account, and statistical discrepancy.

10.11 KEY WORDS

- **Poverty line:** The estimated smallest amount of money that a person or a family needs to secure the basic necessities of life. In India, a person or family qualifies for a below poverty line (BPL) list, if his/their annual income is about ₹ 27000.
- **Purchasing power:** The amount of goods or services that one unit of a currency can purchase.
- **Capital asset:** An asset with more than one year of useful life. Examples include property, cars, stocks, bonds, and art collectibles.
- **Capital gain:** The increase in the monetary value of a capital asset relative to its purchasing power.
- **Inflation:** The economic trend where the prices continuously rise and the purchasing power of the currency depletes.
- **Devaluation:** The process of reducing the exchange rate of domestic currency in order to make domestic goods cheaper to foreigners. It is only done if the exchange rate system is fixed. It may increase inflation within the country.
- **Depreciation:** The process of dropping the purchasing power of the domestic currency in a free market system where the demand for FOREX is more than the supply of FOREX of the country.

10.12 CASE STUDY: ENTRY OF HUAWEI INTO INDIA

This case study explores the globalisation strategy used by Huawei, the world's second largest telecommunication company, to enter into the Indian market.

Problem

Huawei is a Chinese business-to-business (B2B) company that rapidly expanded into the global market since 1997. Before that, its name was literally unheard of outside China. In 2000, the company decided to enter into the Indian market. However, it faced various challenges:

- **Crowded space:** The telecommunication space was crowded with various domestic and international players. In such a space, the company had to make a distinctive brand for itself as a reliable partner.
- **Politically charged history:** Ever since the Sino-Indian wars in 1962, India and China had maintained a cool distance. Clashes between the two troops in the disputed northern border were not unheard of. In such a scenario, the Indians regarded the Chinese company with scepticism.
- **Cultural perception:** For most Indians, the Communist Republic of China was a closed country. Although neighbours, the people-to-people exchange between the two Asian giants was very rare. One reason could be attributed to the language difference; Chinese were mostly non-English speakers, whereas most of India used English as their business language. Therefore, Huawei found it difficult to establish trustworthy relations with the Indian businesses community.
- **Quality perception:** In India, Chinese products were perceived to be of inferior quality. This was a negative factor for Huawei.

Solution

To overcome these challenges, Huawei decided to invest some time to understand the Indian market better. The company implemented the following steps:

- Established R&D centres and service centres in the country.
- Allocated 90% jobs locally to the Indians—a fact that worked very favourably in building a good reputation of the company among the Indians.
- Set up two production plants in Chennai.
- Conducted skill based workshops for Indians with Huawei staff to make them aware about the international standards. This also helped the company to clarify the cultural misconceptions the Indians had about the Chinese.
- Sourced most of its components locally, which made them not only cheaper but also helped the local companies to achieve international quality standards. Again, the Huawei staff helped the local companies in skill and technology enhancement.
- Promoted consumer products such as smartphones by establishing strategic partnerships with local media channels.

NOTES

- Advertised Huawei smartphones as aspirational products to remove the perception of low quality of Chinese products.
- Fostered a strong brand culture.
- Set up rewards and recognition programs for R&D talent.
- Promoted Indian employees to managerial positions.

Conclusion

There is a misconception among strategy formulators and marketers that the two Asian giants, India and China, share a similar culture, which is not the case. For companies on both sides to enter into each other's market, it is important to study the market comprehensively before entering into it.

The Chinese company Huawei found it as difficult to break the cultural barriers in the Indian market as the Western companies do. Huawei was able to successfully overcome these barriers by:

- Establishing itself as a trustworthy brand
- Building relationships with the local businesses and personnel
- Committing a long-term, sustainable relationship that would boost India's economy and create jobs for locals
- Providing superior quality consumer products

Source: <https://www.ft.com/content/a7c4d656-fe89-11e1-8028-00144feabdc0>

QUESTIONS

1. What were the challenges faced by Huawei while entering the Indian market? Compare those challenges with the challenges that the company faced while entering another market, such as Europe or Africa.

(Hint: Crowded telecom market, political differences, cultural differences, misconceptions about the company and its products, general scepticism about job creation, etc.)

2. What are the key learnings from the Huawei's entry into India?

(Hint: Always study the foreign market with an open mind, never pre-assume anything particularly with respect to the company's image and the local culture, invest and commit to develop trustworthy relations, etc.)

10.13 EXERCISE

1. What do you mean by globalisation? What is its impact on the Indian industry?
2. What are the major effects of globalisation?
3. What are the different modes of entering an international market?
4. What are the different types of international strategies?

5. What environment is conducive to foreign trade and investment?
6. What do you mean by exchange rate movements? What is their impact?
7. What are the mega globalisation trends? What are the key challenges to globalisation?
8. Explain BOP. Illustrate the trends of BOP in India.

10.14 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Globalisation and its Impact on the Indian Industry	1.	b. 1990-91
	2.	Liberalisation, Privatisation, Globalisation
	3.	a. Forex reserves increase
Effects of Globalisation	4.	d. Removed poverty to some level
	5.	False
Mode of Entries in International Market	6.	b. Importing
	7.	c. FDI
Types of International Trade Strategies	8.	a. Global
	9.	c. Multi-domestic
Environment for Foreign Trade and Investment	10.	b. Less red-tapism
	11.	d. Corruption
Exchange Rate Movements and their Impact	12.	b. The country is running trade surplus
	13.	a. Improved balance of trade
Globalisation Trends and Challenges	14.	a. Shifts in the production and labour market
	15.	b. Job mobility
Balance of Payments Trends	16.	d. international
	17.	b. Capital account

10.15 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Newell, P. and Roberts, J.T. (2017) *The Globalization and Environment Reader*. Chichester, West Sussex, UK: John Wiley & Sons.
- Padhi, P. (2013). *Legal Aspects of Business*. New Delhi: PHI Learning.
- Tulsian, P. (2014). *Business Law*. New Delhi: McGraw Hill Education (India) Private Limited

E-REFERENCES

- Positive and Negative Effects of Globalization | Edusson Blog. (2019). Retrieved from <https://edusson.com/blog/positive-and-negative-effects-of-globalization>
- International-Expansion Entry Modes. (2019). Retrieved from https://saylordotorg.github.io/text_international-business/s12-03-international-expansion-entry-.html

WUOLAH

Business Ethics

Table of Contents

- 11.1 Introduction
- 11.2 Concept of Ethics
 - 11.2.1 Theories of Ethics
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 11.3 Business and Ethics
 - 11.3.1 Importance of Ethics in Business
 - 11.3.2 Ethical Principles and Practices in Business
 - 11.3.3 Myths and Ambiguities Related to Business Ethics
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 11.4 Management and Ethics
 - 11.4.1 Ethical Decision Making and Resolving Business Problems
 - 11.4.2 Ethical Reasoning, Moral Worth and Moral Obligation
 - 11.4.3 Moral Rights and Duties
 - 11.4.4 Ethical Leadership
 - 11.4.5 Ethical Dilemma
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 11.5 Code of Ethics for Managers
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 11.6 Developing an Ethical Organisational Culture
 - Self Assessment Questions

Table of Contents

- 11.7 4-V Model of Ethical Leadership**
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 11.8 Summary**
- 11.9 Key Words**
- 11.10 Case Study**
- 11.11 Exercise**
- 11.12 Answers for Self Assessment Questions**
- 11.13 Suggested Books and e-References**

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the concept of ethics
- Explain the business and ethics
- Describe the management and ethics
- Understand the code of ethics for managers
- Explain the importance of ethical organisational culture
- Describe the 4-V model of ethical leadership

11.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied the concept of the globalisation and its impact on the Indian industry. The chapter also discussed about the effects of globalisation and mode of entries in international market. You also studied the types of international trade strategies and environment for foreign trade and investment. At the end of the chapter you studied exchange rate movements and their impact, globalisation trends and challenges and balance of payment trends.

Ethics in business plays a crucial role in shaping the overall well-being of society and the success of organisations. At its core, business ethics involves conducting operations with integrity, honesty and commitment to moral principles. When companies prioritise ethical practices, they contribute to keeping positive corporate culture and fostering trust among employees, customers, and stakeholders. Moreover, ethical behaviour helps businesses build and maintain a strong reputation, which is increasingly important in today's interconnected world.

Companies that adhere to ethical standards are more likely to attract and retain customers, investors and talented employees. Additionally, ethical decision-making extends beyond financial considerations, taking into account the broader impact of business activities on the environment, communities and society as a whole. In the long run, businesses that integrate ethics into their core values are better positioned for sustainable success, as they not only comply with legal requirements but also contribute to the greater good and societal progress. Ultimately, the role of ethics in business is pivotal, influencing not only the individual enterprise but also shaping the collective character of the business world and its impact on the global community.

This chapter begins with the concept of ethics. Further it discusses business and ethics. It also illustrates and management and ethics and code of ethics for managers. Towards the end, the chapter explains developing an ethical organisational culture and 4-V model of ethical leadership.

11.2 CONCEPT OF ETHICS

The term "Ethics" originates from the Greek term 'ethos,' signifying character or conduct. Ethics is also referred to as moral philosophy or philosophical contemplation on morality. Morality, in turn, is explained as actions and behaviour concerning the concepts of 'good' or 'evil' within specific traditions, groups, or individuals.

The terms 'moral' and 'ethical' are frequently used interchangeably with 'right' or 'good,' in contrast to 'immoral' and 'unethical.' However, this usage doesn't imply moral correctness or goodness but is closely linked to morality. Ethics is concerned with moral behaviour, distinguishing between right and wrong, and evaluating the good or evil in human conduct. It advocates principles that guide our behaviour to be moral.

To comprehend the essence of ethics, it is helpful to explore the words 'right' and 'good.' 'Right' is derived from the Latin word 'rectus,' meaning 'straight' or 'according to rule.' This implies a focus on principles that align our conduct with what is right or in accordance with established rules.

11.2.1 | THEORIES OF ETHICS

Theories of ethics refer to systematic and philosophical frameworks that seek to understand, explain, and prescribe principles or guidelines for determining what is morally right or wrong in human behaviour. These theories aim to provide a foundation for ethical decision-making, guiding individuals and societies in navigating moral dilemmas and shaping their ethical perspectives. There are several major theories of ethics, each offering a unique approach to understanding morality.

ABSOLUTISM VS. RELATIVISM

Absolutism

Absolutism takes an objective approach, categorising actions as inherently right or wrong. In this perspective, the surrounding context of an action holds little significance; the primary focus is solely on the nature of the action itself, determining it as either right or wrong, or even as good or evil. This judgment remains unaffected by the challenging conditions under which the action occurs.

To delve deeper, consider a specific branch of absolutism known as moral absolutism. According to this concept, all moral questions have a definitive right or wrong answer, with the context playing a minimal role in determining the inherent morality or immorality of actions. Notably, absolutism dismisses the significance of individual or group intentions, beliefs or goals. This rigid adherence to a clear-cut right or wrong answer is why throughout history, legal systems and many religions have favoured absolutism, finding it easier to enforce laws when there is a moral framework.

Relativism

Relativism opposes the objective examination of actions, asserting that human actions defy strict categorisation as either right or wrong. It emphasises the significance of the context in which an action occurs and takes into account the intentions, beliefs, and goals of individuals or groups. Consequently, this approach is characterised by a lack of excessive objectivity.

When delving into moral relativism and contrasting it with absolute relativism, a notable distinction emerges. Unlike absolute relativism, moral relativism does not

prescribe universal moral truths but acknowledges the contextual and relative nature of circumstances, encompassing cultural, individual, and social factors.

TELEOLOGICAL THEORY

Teleological ethics is a theory according to which the morality of an action is contingent upon its consequences. The term “teleological” is derived from the Greek words “telos,” meaning end or goal, and “logos,” denoting science. Consequently, teleological theories centre on the outcomes of actions, suggesting that the moral correctness of our actions depends on the positive or negative outcomes they yield. In essence, teleologists seek to understand the purpose of something by evaluating its results, deeming an action morally good if it generates positive outcomes and morally bad if it yields negative consequences.

Furthermore, this theory is consequential in nature, as the moral judgment of an action is contingent upon its outcome. In teleological ethics, the driving force behind moral decisions is the resulting consequences. For instance, while conventional wisdom often condemns lying, in teleological ethics, telling a lie might be deemed morally acceptable if it leads to no harm, contributes to someone’s happiness, or aids in saving another person. However, the challenge lies in the difficulty of accurately predicting the potential outcomes or consequences of our actions, serving as a notable weakness of teleology.

DEONTOLOGICAL THEORY

Deontology is an ethical approach that centres on the inherent rightness or wrongness of actions, without considering their consequences or other factors. Consequently, it stands as a non-consequential theory where the moral judgment of an act is not contingent on its outcomes. In deontology, the moral decision is driven by the nature of the action itself.

This ethical perspective is often associated with the philosopher Immanuel Kant, who advocated for ethical actions guided by universal moral laws, such as refraining from cheating, stealing, and lying. Deontology places emphasis on adhering to these rules and fulfilling one’s duty, aiming to sidestep subjectivity and uncertainty. For instance, if faced with a scenario where you dislike a gift from a friend, a deontological stance would require telling the truth, regardless of the potential negative outcome, such as hurting your friend. In essence, deontology involves disregarding the potential consequences of actions when determining what is morally right or wrong.

KOHLBERG’S MODEL OF COGNITIVE MORAL DEVELOPMENT (CMD)

Lawrence Kohlberg’s Model of Cognitive Moral Development (CMD) is a theory that outlines the stages of moral reasoning that individuals go through as they develop. Kohlberg expanded on the earlier work of Swiss psychologist Jean Piaget and conducted extensive research on the moral development of children, adolescents, and adults. His model is based on the idea that individuals progress through a series of stages, each characterised by a distinct way of thinking about moral issues.

Figure 1 displays Lawrence Kohlberg's model of cognitive moral development:

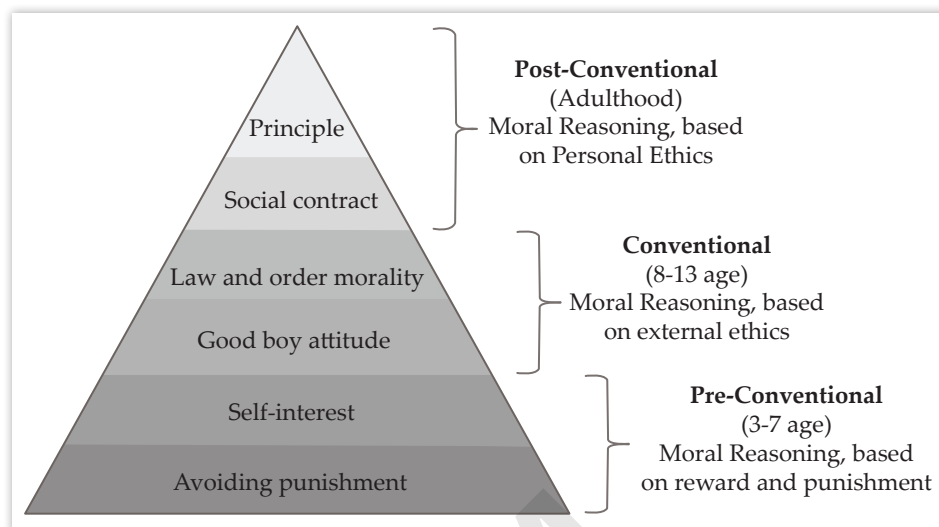


FIGURE 1: Lawrence Kohlberg's Model of Cognitive Moral Development

Kohlberg's theory states that people go through six stages of moral development, from early childhood to adulthood. The stages are grouped into three levels: pre-conventional, conventional, and post-conventional. Let us discuss them one by one:

- **Pre-conventional:** Pre-conventional morality (ages 3-7 years) is based on the avoidance of punishment and the pursuit of reward. At this level, children believe that right and wrong are determined by the consequences of actions. For example, a child might believe that it is wrong to steal because they will be punished if they get caught.
- **Conventional:** Conventional morality (ages 8-13 years) is based on social norms and expectations. At this level, individuals believe that right and wrong are determined by what society says is right and wrong. For example, a conventional moralist might believe that it is wrong to steal because stealing is against the law.
- **Post-conventional:** Post-conventional morality (adulthood) is based on personal ethics and principles. At this level, individuals believe that right and wrong are determined by their own internalised moral code. For example, a post-conventional moralist might believe that it is wrong to steal because stealing violates the principle of fairness.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. Moral relativism dismisses the significance of individual or group intentions, beliefs or goals. (True/False)
2. What is the central focus of teleological ethics?
 - a. Inherent rightness or wrongness of actions
 - b. Consequences of actions
 - c. Social norms and expectations
 - d. Avoidance of punishment and pursuit of reward

11.3 BUSINESS AND ETHICS

Business ethics refers to the application of moral and ethical principles to the conduct of business activities. It involves making decisions that consider not only financial profitability but also the impact on various stakeholders, such as customers, employees, suppliers, and the broader community. Business ad ethics underscores the importance of integrity, honesty, fairness, and responsibility in all business dealings. In the realm of business advertising, ethical considerations become crucial. Advertisers must ensure that their promotional efforts are truthful, transparent, and do not deceive or manipulate consumers. This includes providing accurate information about products or services, avoiding false or misleading claims, and respecting the privacy of individuals.

Adherence to business and ethics contributes to the establishment of trust between businesses and their customers. It fosters a positive reputation and long-term relationships, as consumers are more likely to support companies that demonstrate ethical practices. Ultimately, incorporating ethical standards into business advertising is not only a legal requirement but also a strategic choice that can lead to sustained success and positive societal impact.

Ethical business practices not only contribute to the overall reputation and sustainability of a company but also help build trust with customers and other stakeholders. It's essential for businesses to develop and enforce a strong ethical framework to guide their operations and decision-making processes.

11.3.1 | IMPORTANCE OF ETHICS IN BUSINESS

Ethics play a crucial role in business for a variety of reasons, influencing both the internal culture of a company and its external relationships with customers, partners and the community.

The importance of ethics in business are as follows:

- **Reputation and Trust:** Ethical behaviour contributes to a positive reputation, and trust is a fundamental element in business relationships. A company with strong ethical foundation is more likely to gain the trust of customers, employees, and stakeholders.
- **Customer Loyalty:** Ethical business practices, including transparent communication and fair treatment of customers, foster loyalty. Customers are more likely to support and remain loyal to companies they perceive as ethical.
- **Employee Morale and Productivity:** A workplace with a strong ethical culture tends to have higher employee morale. When employees feel that their company operates ethically, they are more likely to be motivated, engaged, and productive.
- **Long-Term Success:** Ethical behaviour contributes to the long-term success and sustainability of a business. Unethical practices may lead to short-term gains but can result in severe consequences, such as legal problems, loss of customers, and damage to the brand.

- **Attracting and Retaining Talent:** Companies with a reputation for ethical practices are more attractive to talented individuals seeking employment. Employees are more likely to stay with an organisation that operates ethically, contributing to a stable and skilled workforce.
- **Positive Impact on Society:** Ethical businesses consider their impact on society and the environment. Engaging in socially responsible practices can lead to positive contributions to the community, enhancing the company's image and relationships with stakeholders.

11.3.2 | ETHICAL PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES IN BUSINESS

Some of the ethical principles and practices are as follows:

- **Honesty:** All team members are expected to adhere to a commitment to truthfulness in all forms of communication and actions. This encompasses refraining from intentionally conveying partial truths, selectively omitting information, making misrepresentations or exaggerations. Honesty also entails consistently sharing both favourable and unfavourable news with equal openness.
- **Fairness:** All transactions and interactions should be grounded in a deliberate dedication to fairness, treating others with the same consideration one would desire. Fairness entails treating all individuals equitably and courteously, refraining from exercising power arbitrarily, and avoiding the exploitation of weaknesses or mistakes for personal or corporate gain.
- **Leadership:** Leadership is exhibited through a conscious effort to exemplify ethical behaviour, reflecting a commitment to excellence through ethical decision-making. Businesses strive to maintain their leadership positions by continuously enhancing operational efficiency, worker satisfaction and customer loyalty.
- **Integrity:** Organisations and individuals showcase integrity by consistently aligning actions with words, fostering trust and credibility. Integrity involves keeping promises, honouring commitments, meeting deadlines, and abstaining from involvement in unscrupulous activities or business practices.
- **Compassion:** Cultivating a business environment characterised by empathy and compassion necessitates a dedication to kindness and care towards all team members, business associates, and customers. Business objectives should prioritise benevolence, ensuring an understanding of the needs and sensitivities of others, including the local community.
- **Respect:** Respect is demonstrated through a wholehearted commitment to the human rights, dignity, autonomy, interests, and privacy of all team members. It involves recognising that everyone deserves equal respect and support for expressing ideas and opinions without fear of penalty or discrimination.

11.3.3 | MYTHS AND AMBIGUITIES RELATED TO BUSINESS ETHICS

Some of the myths and ambiguities related to business ethics are as follows:

- **Business ethics is more a matter of religion than management:** This implies that business ethics is rooted in religious beliefs and does not have a place in the realm

of management practices. In reality, business ethics is a multidimensional concept influenced by various factors, including philosophical principles, cultural norms, and legal frameworks. While religious beliefs can inform personal ethical values, business ethics encompasses a broader, inclusive approach that considers diverse perspectives.

- **Our employees are ethical, so we don't need attention to business ethics:** This assumes that individual employees' ethical behaviour is sufficient reason to ignore the need for a formalised approach to business ethics. Even ethical individuals can face ethical dilemmas in a business context. Establishing clear ethical guidelines, codes of conduct, and a supportive ethical culture helps guide employees in navigating complex situations and ensures a consistent ethical standard across the organisation.
- **Business ethics is a matter of the good guys preaching to the bad guys:** This suggests a simplistic dichotomy between 'good' and 'bad' individuals within an organisation, with ethical behaviour seen as a virtue possessed solely by certain individuals. Business ethics involves fostering a culture of collective responsibility and continuous improvement. It is not about moral superiority but about creating an environment that encourages ethical decision-making at all levels of an organisation.
- **Business ethics is the new policeperson on the block:** This phrase implies that the emphasis on business ethics is merely a form of policing or imposing control within an organisation. While ethics may involve establishing guidelines and standards, it goes beyond a punitive approach. Effective business ethics promotes a positive and proactive culture, encouraging ethical behaviour through education, communication, and support rather than solely relying on enforcement.
- **Managing ethics in the workplace has little practical relevance:** This notion suggests that efforts to manage and promote ethics in the workplace lack practical applicability and tangible benefits. On the contrary, managing ethics has practical relevance by reducing legal risks, enhancing reputation, fostering employee morale and improving relationships with stakeholders. Ethical practices contribute to long-term success and sustainability, making them highly relevant in the practical business context.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. Ethical business practices contribute to a positive reputation and have positive impact on customer loyalty. (True/False)
4. How does ethical behaviour contribute to employee morale?
 - a. Ignoring ethical considerations boosts morale
 - b. Ethical culture has no impact on employee motivation
 - c. Employees are more motivated in a workplace with a strong ethical culture
 - d. Morale is unaffected by transparency and fairness

11.4 MANAGEMENT AND ETHICS

Management involves coordinating and overseeing the activities of an organisation to achieve its goals efficiently and effectively. It encompasses planning, organising, leading and controlling resources to achieve organisational objectives. Effective management is essential for ensuring that resources are utilised optimally, tasks are coordinated, and goals are achieved in a timely manner.

The relationship between management and ethics is crucial for creating a sustainable and responsible business environment.

Role of Ethics in Management

Ethics plays a crucial role in all three levels of management—top-level management, middle-level management, and front-line or lower-level management. Let us discuss each of them one by one:

- **Top-Level Management:** Top-level management is responsible for making strategic decisions that shape the overall direction of the organisation. Executives and top managers serve as role models for ethical behaviour. They establish the ethical tone and culture of the organisation, emphasising the importance of integrity, transparency, and social responsibility. Top-level management is also involved in establishing and overseeing corporate governance practices. Ethical governance ensures accountability, fairness, and responsible management of resources.
- **Middle-Level Management:** Middle-level managers are responsible for translating the strategic decisions made by top management into practical policies and actions. They play a crucial role in implementing and enforcing ethical policies throughout the organisation. Middle managers often deal with competing interests from various stakeholders. Ethical decision-making involves balancing the needs of employees, customers, shareholders, and the broader community to ensure a fair and sustainable approach. These managers facilitate communication about ethical expectations within the organisation. They are involved in training employees on ethical standards, creating awareness, and addressing ethical concerns at the operational level.
- **Front-Line or Lower-Level Management:** Front-line managers are directly involved in the day-to-day operations of the organisation. Ethical considerations are crucial in routine decision-making, whether it involves managing teams, allocating resources or handling customer interactions. Ethical behaviour is vital in managing relationships with employees. This includes fair treatment, addressing workplace issues, and ensuring a safe and inclusive work environment. These managers often interact directly with customers. Ethical conduct in marketing, sales, and customer service is essential for building trust and maintaining a positive reputation.

11.4.1 | ETHICAL DECISION MAKING AND RESOLVING BUSINESS PROBLEMS

Ethical decision-making is a process that involves carefully weighing moral considerations, legal obligations and the core values of an organisation. It requires individuals to navigate complex scenarios by systematically evaluating potential courses of action. This analysis extends beyond immediate outcomes, encompassing the broader impact on stakeholders and society at large. Resolving business problems ethically involves finding solutions that not only address practical challenges but also align with principles of fairness, transparency and integrity. Cultivating a culture of ethical decision-making within an organisation contributes to a positive reputation, builds trust and establishes a sustainable foundation for long-term success. This commitment to ethical practices enhances both internal dynamics and external relationships.

Following are the some examples to understand ethical decision making:

- A company is hiring for a crucial position. Ethical decision-making would involve assessing candidates based on merit, skills, and qualifications rather than favouritism or discriminatory practices. Resolving the business problem of finding the right fit requires aligning the hiring process with ethical principles, promoting diversity, and ensuring equal opportunities for all candidates.
- In the manufacturing sector, a company faces the ethical dilemma of environmental impact. Ethical decision-making involves investing in sustainable practices, reducing carbon footprint, and adhering to environmental regulations. Resolving this business problem requires integrating eco-friendly technologies and processes to align with ethical standards and societal expectations for corporate responsibility.
- A company encounters financial challenges. Ethical decision-making involves transparent financial reporting, avoiding deceptive practices, and ensuring accurate representation of the company's financial health. Resolving this business problem ethically requires honesty in communicating financial difficulties, seeking responsible solutions, and safeguarding the interests of stakeholders through fair and open practices.

11.4.2 | ETHICAL REASONING, MORAL WORTH AND MORAL OBLIGATION

Table 1 displays the ethical reasoning, moral worth and moral obligation:

TABLE 1: The Ethical Reasoning, Moral Worth and Moral Obligation

Aspects	Ethical reasoning	Moral worth	Moral obligation
Definition	Ethical reasoning refers to the process of systematically analysing and evaluating moral issues or dilemmas to make informed and morally justifiable decisions.	Moral worth is the intrinsic value or moral merit assigned to an action or decision based on its alignment with ethical principles and the moral character of the individual performing the action.	Moral obligation refers to the duty or responsibility one has to act in a certain way or make specific decisions based on ethical considerations and principles.

NOTES

Aspects	Ethical reasoning	Moral worth	Moral obligation
Components	Ethical reasoning involves considering various ethical principles, values, and potential consequences to arrive at a decision that aligns with one's moral beliefs or a commonly accepted ethical framework.	Actions that demonstrate virtues such as honesty, integrity, compassion, and fairness are often considered to have moral worth. The evaluation of moral worth is influenced by the motivations, intentions, and character of the person involved.	Moral obligations are often derived from ethical theories, cultural norms, religious beliefs, or a sense of social responsibility. Individuals may perceive obligations to respect the rights of others, promote justice, or contribute to the common good.
Example	When faced with a moral dilemma, an individual engaged in ethical reasoning might weigh the principles of justice, fairness, and the well-being of affected parties to arrive at a decision that is ethically sound.	Donating to a charitable cause out of a genuine desire to help others, rather than seeking personal recognition, may be regarded as having higher moral worth.	A healthcare professional may feel a moral obligation to prioritise patient well-being, even in challenging circumstances, based on their commitment to the principles of beneficence and patient-centred care.

Ethical reasoning, moral worth, and moral obligation significantly influence the workplace. They guide decision-making, foster trust, and promote accountability. Employees are motivated by a sense of purpose and dignity, driving ethical behaviour and commitment. Managers prioritise the well-being of stakeholders, leading to sustainable practices and positive societal impact.

11.4.3 | MORAL RIGHTS AND DUTIES

Moral rights and duties are fundamental concepts in ethical philosophy that explore the ethical obligations individuals have towards one another and the broader society. Moral rights are the entitlements or claims that individuals possess by virtue of being human, and they often involve the protection of certain fundamental values such as life, liberty, and dignity. These rights form the basis for ethical frameworks and legal systems that seek to ensure the fair and just treatment of individuals. On the other hand, moral duties refer to the responsibilities and obligations individuals have to respect the rights of others and to act in ways that contribute to the well-being of society. Moral duties are derived from ethical principles and norms that guide human behaviour toward what is considered morally right or good. These duties are often grounded in the recognition of the inherent worth and equality of all individuals.

The relationship between moral rights and duties is reciprocal. The existence of rights implies corresponding duties for others to respect and uphold those rights. For example, if individuals have a right to life, others have a moral duty not to

infringe upon that right. Conversely, individuals have moral duties to contribute positively to society and respect the rights of others.

These concepts are foundational to ethical theories such as deontology, which emphasises the importance of moral duties and principles, and rights-based ethics, which centres on the recognition and protection of individual rights. Discussions around moral rights and duties are essential in various contexts, including legal systems, human rights advocacy, and everyday moral decision-making. By understanding and acknowledging these concepts, individuals and societies can cultivate a more ethical and just environment, promoting mutual respect, fairness, and the well-being of all.

11.4.4 | ETHICAL LEADERSHIP

Ethical leadership refers to a leadership style that prioritises and promotes ethical behaviour, values, and decision-making within an organisation. Ethical leaders serve as role models, setting a standard for integrity and moral conduct.

Figure 2 displays eight traits of ethical leadership:

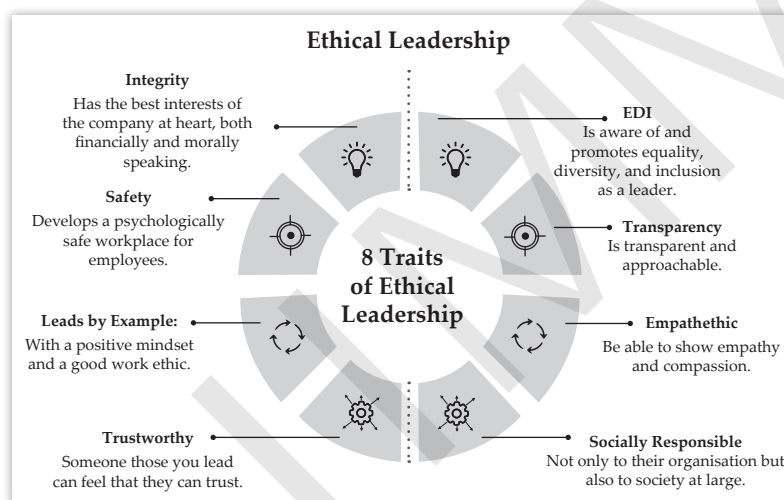


Figure 2: Eight Traits of Ethical Leadership

Let us discuss the eight traits of ethical leadership:

- **Integrity:** Ethical leaders are honest and fair in their dealings with others. They make decisions that are in the best interests of the company and its employees, even when those decisions are difficult.
- **Safety:** Ethical leaders create a workplace where employees feel safe to speak up and share their ideas. They are also committed to providing a safe physical environment for their employees.
- **Transparency:** Ethical leaders are open and honest with their employees and stakeholders. They communicate openly about the company's performance, challenges, and plans.

NOTES

- **Trustworthiness:** Ethical leaders are trustworthy and reliable. They keep their promises and commitments, and they are honest and truthful in their dealings with others.
- **Empathy:** Ethical leaders are able to understand and share the feelings of others. They are compassionate and caring, and they treat their employees with respect.
- **Social responsibility:** Ethical leaders are committed to making a positive impact on society. They consider the ethical implications of their decisions, and they strive to act in a way that is beneficial to the company, its employees, and the communities in which it operates.
- **Leads by example:** Ethical leaders set a good example for their employees. They demonstrate the values that they believe in, and they hold themselves to the same high standards that they expect from others.

11.4.5 | ETHICAL DILEMMA

An ethical dilemma is a complex situation in which an individual or a group of individuals faces conflicting moral principles, making it challenging to determine the right course of action. In such scenario, there are typically two or more morally acceptable options, but each option may involve compromising one ethical principle to uphold another. Ethical dilemmas arise when individuals must navigate the tension between competing values, responsibilities or duties.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. Which ethical theory emphasises the importance of moral duties and principles?
 - a. Utilitarianism
 - b. Virtue Ethics
 - c. Deontology
 - d. Relativism
6. _____ involves creating a workplace where employees feel safe to speak up and share their ideas.

11.5 | CODE OF ETHICS FOR MANAGERS

A code of ethics is a formal set of principles or guidelines that outline expected behaviours and standards for individuals or members within an organisation or profession. It serves as a moral compass, providing a framework to guide decision-making and actions. A typical code of ethics includes principles such as honesty, integrity, transparency, respect and responsibility. It helps establish a culture of ethical conduct and accountability, promoting trust among stakeholders and contributing to the overall integrity of the organisation or profession.

A well-implemented code of ethics promotes a positive organisational culture, builds trust among stakeholders, and guides employees in navigating ethical dilemmas. Regular training, communication, and enforcement are essential for the effective implementation and maintenance of a Code of Ethics within an organisation.

Figure 3 displays the code of ethics for managers:

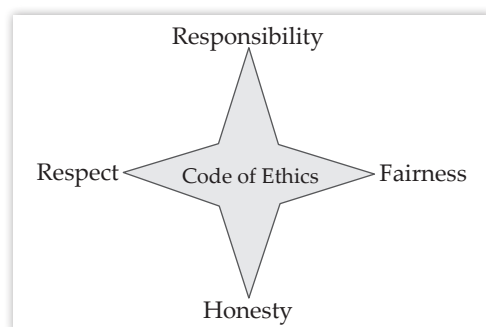


FIGURE 3: The Code of Ethics for Managers

Below are the explanations outlining the code of ethics designed for managers:

- **Responsibility:** Managers are accountable for their actions and decisions, prioritising the well-being of stakeholders and the organisation. This involves making decisions with long-term consequences, taking ownership of mistakes and fulfilling duties to employees, customers and the community.
- **Fairness:** Managers must treat all individuals equitably, without bias or discrimination. Fairness involves just decision-making, unbiased treatment of employees and creating an inclusive work environment where opportunities are accessible to everyone.
- **Honesty:** Managers are committed to truthfulness and transparent communication. Honesty requires providing accurate information, admitting mistakes, and avoiding deceitful practices. Open and transparent communication fosters trust among team members.
- **Respect:** Managers value the dignity and worth of every individual, treating them with courtesy. Respectful behaviour involves listening actively, acknowledging diverse perspectives and fostering a workplace where all employees feel valued and appreciated.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7. Which principle of the code of ethics for managers involves making decisions with long-term consequences and taking ownership of mistakes?
 - a. Fairness
 - b. Responsibility
 - c. Honesty
 - d. Respect
8. Managers should prioritise biased treatment of employees to maintain a strict hierarchy within the organisation. (True/ False)

11.6 DEVELOPING AN ETHICAL ORGANISATIONAL CULTURE

Organisational culture refers to the collective set of values, beliefs, behaviours, customs, and practices that shape the identity and functioning of an organisation. It is the shared framework that guides how members of the organisation interact with each other, make decisions, and adapt to changes. Organisational culture is often

considered the “personality” of a company, influencing everything from employee morale and productivity to the overall success and sustainability of the organisation.

Ethical organisational culture refers to the shared values, beliefs, and behaviours within an organisation that prioritise and promote ethical conduct. It involves fostering an environment where employees at all levels are committed to upholding high moral standards, integrity, and social responsibility. An ethical organisational culture goes beyond mere compliance with laws and regulations; it emphasises a proactive approach to ethical decision-making and behaviour.

Figure 4 displays the ways to developing an ethical organisational culture:

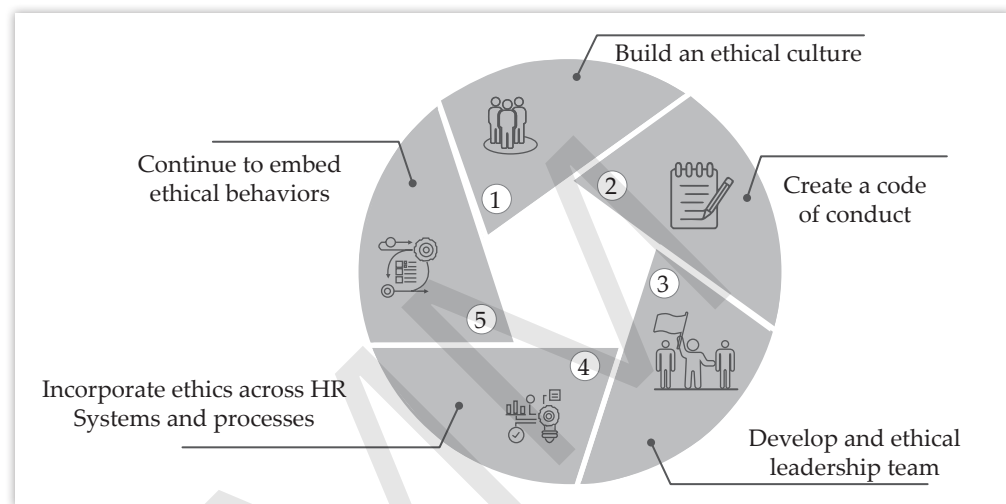


FIGURE 4: Ways to Developing an Ethical Organisational Culture

Below are the explanations outlining the ways to developing an ethical organisational culture:

- **Build an ethical culture:** Building an ethical culture involves fostering shared values, transparent communication, accountability and ethical leadership to guide behaviour, ensuring integrity and trust within the organisation.
- **Create a code of conduct:** A code of conduct is a set of rules that employees must follow in order to be ethical. It is important to have a code of conduct in place so that employees know what is expected of them and what the consequences will be if they do not meet those expectations.
- **Develop an ethical leadership team:** The leadership team plays a critical role in setting the tone for the organisation’s ethical culture. It is important to have leaders who are committed to ethical behaviour and who will role model ethical behaviour for others.
- **Incorporate ethics across HR systems and processes:** Ethics should be incorporated into all of the organisation’s HR systems and processes, such as hiring, promotion and performance evaluation. This will help to ensure that ethical behaviour is rewarded and unethical behaviour is punished.
- **Continue to embed ethical behaviours:** Once a code of conduct is in place, it is important to continue to embed ethical behaviours into the organisation’s culture. This can be done through training, role modelling, and feedback. It is also

important to create an environment where employees feel comfortable speaking up and reporting unethical behaviour.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

9. An ethical organisational culture only requires compliance with laws and regulations. (True/False)
10. A _____ is a set of rules that employee must follow to be ethical, outlining expectations and consequences for non-compliance.

11.7 4-V MODEL OF ETHICAL LEADERSHIP

The 4-V model of ethical leadership is a framework that emphasises four key components essential for effective ethical leadership. Developed by Dr. Bill Grace, this model provides a comprehensive approach to understanding and implementing ethical leadership within organisations. The four “V” elements in this model are Vision, Values, Voice, and Virtue.

The 4-V Model highlights the importance of having a clear ethical vision, grounded in strong values and creating an open and communicative environment where ethical concerns are addressed. Ethical leaders, through their virtues, set the tone for the entire organisation and contribute to the development of an ethical culture. The model underscores the interconnectedness of these four components in promoting ethical leadership and fostering an ethical organisational climate. Figure 5 displays 4-V model of ethical leadership:

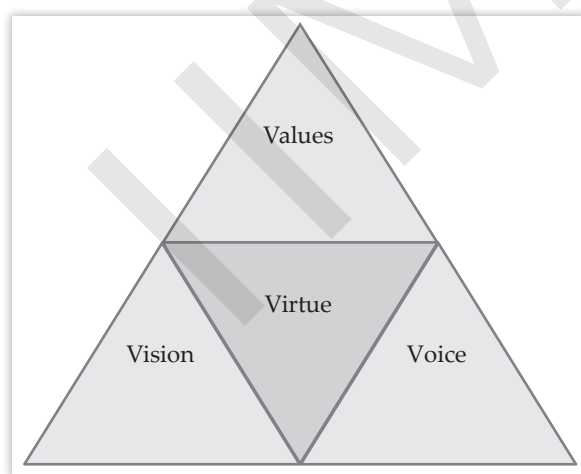


FIGURE 5: 4-V Model of Ethical Leadership

Below are the explanations outlining the 4-V model of ethical leadership:

- **Vision:** Ethical leaders should have a clear and compelling vision that reflects a positive ethical future for the organisation. Leaders need to articulate and communicate a vision that aligns with ethical principles and inspires others to work towards ethical goals.
- **Values:** Ethical leaders must be guided by a strong set of core values that prioritise ethical behaviour. Leaders should consistently model and uphold ethical values, creating a values-driven culture within the organisation.

NOTES

- **Voice:** Ethical leaders encourage open communication and foster an environment where employees feel comfortable expressing their concerns. Leaders need to listen actively, provide opportunities for feedback, and respond appropriately to ethical concerns raised by employees.
- **Virtue:** Ethical leaders show virtuous qualities such as integrity, honesty, and humility. Leaders should demonstrate ethical virtues in their actions and decisions, serving as role models for others in the organisation.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

11. According to the 4-V Model, what does “Voice” refer to in ethical leadership?
 - a. Ability to articulate a clear ethical vision
 - b. Encouraging open communication and addressing ethical concerns
 - c. Demonstrating virtuous qualities such as integrity and honesty
 - d. Upholding a strong set of core values within the organisation
12. Ethical leaders in the 4-V model should prioritise a vision aligned with ethical principles. (True/False)

11.8 SUMMARY

- Ethics is concerned with moral behaviour, distinguishing between right and wrong, and evaluating the good or evil in human conduct.
- Deontology is an ethical approach that centres on the inherent rightness or wrongness of actions, without considering their consequences or other factors.
- Business ethics refers to the application of moral and ethical principles to the conduct of business activities. It involves making decisions that consider not only financial profitability but also the impact on various stakeholders.
- A workplace with a strong ethical culture tends to have higher employee morale. When employees feel that their company operates ethically, they are more likely to be motivated, engaged, and productive.
- Integrity involves keeping promises, honouring commitments, meeting deadlines, and abstaining from involvement in unscrupulous activities or business practices.
- Effective management is essential for ensuring that resources are utilised optimally, tasks are coordinated, and goals are achieved in a timely manner.
- Middle-level managers are responsible for translating the strategic decisions made by top management into practical policies and actions.
- Ethical reasoning refers to the process of systematically analysing and evaluating moral issues or dilemmas to make informed and morally justifiable decisions.
- Moral worth is the intrinsic value or moral merit assigned to an action or decision based on its alignment with ethical principles and the moral character of the individual performing the action.
- Ethical leadership refers to a leadership style that prioritises and promotes ethical behaviour, values, and decision-making within an organisation.

- A code of ethics is a formal set of principles or guidelines that outline expected behaviours and standards for individuals or members within an organisation or profession.

11.9 KEY WORDS

- **Ethics:** It refers to moral principles guiding conduct, ensuring fair practices and social responsibility.
- **Empathy:** It involves understanding and sharing the feelings of stakeholders, fostering connections.
- **Virtue:** It refers to ethical excellence, embodying positive qualities such as integrity, honesty, and responsibility.
- **Ethical Dilemma:** It is a complex situation requiring a choice between morally conflicting options, often arising in business decision-making.

11.10 CASE STUDY: IMPACT OF ETHICAL LEADERSHIP

John Anderson, a widely acknowledged CEO of a multinational corporation, is renowned for his strategic acumen and charismatic leadership. The company, operating on a global scale, confronts recent financial reports hinting at potential ethical lapses and irregularities within its expansive operations. An internal audit uncovers financial transactions lacking transparency, indicating potential fraudulent practices designed to inflate profits. John Anderson grapples with an ethical dilemma: whether to transparently address these concerns or prioritise short-term financial gains to uphold the company's image and stock value.

In response to the challenge, John embraces ethical leadership by orchestrating a board meeting to transparently disclose audit findings. He takes accountability, emphasising the company's commitment to ethical business practices. Key actions include ensuring transparency and accountability, conducting an unbiased ethical investigation, establishing direct stakeholder communication, and implementing internal reforms for compliance and ethical standards.

The initial revelation leads to a temporary decline in the company's stock value. However, John Anderson's ethical leadership and decisive actions garner widespread acclaim. The independent investigation confirms irregularities, leading to the removal of individuals engaged in unethical practices. Over time, the company rebuilds trust through a commitment to ethical conduct, restoring its reputation. This case exemplifies the transformative power of ethical leadership in navigating challenges, fostering trust, and ensuring long-term success within the corporate landscape.

QUESTIONS

1. How did John Anderson's approach to ethical leadership impact the initial decline in the company's stock value?

(**Hint:** Transparency and decisive actions during financial irregularities influenced stakeholders, mitigating stock value decline.)

2. What role did the independent ethical committee play in addressing the company's ethical challenges, and how did it contribute to credibility?

(**Hint:** Unbiased investigation, external expertise and enhancing credibility in addressing ethical challenges.)

11.11 EXERCISE

1. What do you understand by the concept of ethics?
2. What is the importance of ethics in India?
3. Describe any four myths and ambiguities related to business ethics.
4. Explain the 4-V model of ethical leadership.

11.12 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Concept of Ethics	1.	True
	2.	b. Consequences of actions
Business and Ethics	3.	True
	4.	c. Employees are more motivated in a workplace with a strong ethical culture
Management and Ethics	5.	c. Deontology
	6.	Ethical leadership
Code of Ethics for Managers	7.	b. Responsibility
	8.	False
Developing an Ethical Organisational Culture	9.	False
	10.	code of conduct
4-V Model of Ethical Leadership	11.	b. Encouraging open communication and addressing ethical concerns
	12.	True

11.13 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Ebert, R.J. et al. (2020) Business essentials. North York, ON: Pearson Canada.
- Meiners, R.E., Ringleb, A.H. and Edwards, F.L. (2018) The Legal Environment of Business. Boston, MA, USA: Cengage Learning.

E-REFERENCES

- <https://www.distanceeducationju.in/pdf/BA%20Sem%20III%20Course%20No%20PL-301%20Philosophy.pdf>
- <https://online.marquette.edu/business/blog/what-are-the-12-ethical-principles-for-business-executives>

Sustainable Development and CSR

Table of Contents

- 12.1 Introduction
- 12.2 Concept of Sustainable Development
 - 12.2.1 Business Organisations and Sustainable Development
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.3 Concept of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR)
 - 12.3.1 Carroll's CSR Pyramid
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.4 Using CSR to Gain Competitive Advantage
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.5 Stakeholders and Shareholders
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.6 Driving Force for CSR in India
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.7 Obstacles in Implementation of CSR
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.8 Corporate Social Responsibility and Corporate Governance
 - Self Assessment Questions
- 12.9 Summary
- 12.10 Key Words
- 12.11 Case Study
- 12.12 Exercise
- 12.13 Answers for Self Assessment Questions
- 12.14 Suggested Books and e-References

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the concept of sustainable development
- Explain the concept of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR)
- Describe the using CSR to gain competitive advantage
- Understand the stakeholders and shareholders
- Articulate the driving force for CSR in India
- Describe the obstacles in implementation of CSR
- Discuss the corporate social responsibility and corporate governance

12.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous chapter, you studied the concept of ethics. The chapter also discussed business and ethics. You had also studied about management, ethics and the code of ethics for managers. At the end of the chapter, you had also studied the developing an ethical organisational culture and 4-V model of ethical leadership.

Sustainable development and Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) play pivotal roles in fostering a positive relationship between businesses and society, ultimately benefiting both. Sustainable development involves meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. By integrating sustainable practices into their operations, businesses can reduce environmental impact, conserve resources, and contribute to long-term ecological balance.

CSR, on the other hand, extends the responsibility of businesses beyond profitability to include social and environmental concerns. Engaging in CSR initiatives, such as community development projects, ethical sourcing, or philanthropy, enhances a company's reputation and builds trust among stakeholders. This positive image can lead to increased customer loyalty, improved employee morale, and heightened investor confidence. Moreover, as consumers become more conscious of environmental and social issues, businesses that prioritise sustainability and CSR are often preferred choices, driving market competitiveness. In essence, embracing sustainable development and CSR not only aligns businesses with global goals for a better future but also strategically positions them for long-term success in an increasingly socially aware marketplace.

This chapter begins with the concept of sustainable development and Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR). Further, it discusses how businesses use CSR to gain competitive advantage and the difference between stakeholders and shareholders. It also illustrates the driving force for CSR in India and obstacles to its implementation. Towards the end, the chapter explains corporate social responsibility and corporate governance.

12.2 CONCEPT OF SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

The concept of sustainable development revolves around the idea of meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. As coined in the 1987 Brundtland Report by the World Commission on Environment and Development, sustainable development emphasises a balanced and integrated approach that considers economic, social, and environmental dimensions. It recognises the interconnectedness of economic progress, social equity, and environmental stewardship.

Economically, sustainable development seeks to promote inclusive growth and prosperity without depleting natural resources or causing irreparable harm to ecosystems. Socially, it aims to address issues of poverty, inequality, and social justice, ensuring that development benefits all members of society. Environmentally, it emphasises responsible resource management, conservation, and the mitigation of environmental degradation to maintain ecological balance.

12.2.1 | BUSINESS ORGANISATIONS AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

Business organisations play a crucial role in sustainable development by incorporating environmental, social, and economic considerations into their operations. Sustainable development means satisfying current needs while preserving resources for future generations. In 2015, 195 nations, in collaboration with the United Nations, committed to a collective effort to positively transform the world. This collaborative endeavour involves uniting their governments, businesses, media, institutions of higher education, and local NGOs to enhance the well-being of their respective populations by the year 2030.

The Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) 2030 Agenda:

- Eradicate Poverty
- Alleviate Hunger
- Promote Good Health and Well-Being
- Ensure Quality Education
- Foster Gender Equality
- Enhance Clean Water and Sanitation
- Facilitate Affordable and Clean Energy
- Promote Decent Work and Economic Growth
- Support Industry, Innovation, and Infrastructure
- Diminish Inequality
- Promote Sustainable Cities and Communities
- Encourage Responsible Consumption and Production
- Champion Climate Action
- Cultivate Life Below Water
- Promote Life on Land

NOTES

- Ensure Peace, Justice, and Strong Institutions
- Foster Partnerships for the Goals

Let us see how some business organisations are helping the world with sustainable development.

- **Unilever:** Unilever is a multinational consumer goods company that has made significant commitments to sustainability. The company has a Sustainable Living Plan, which includes goals such as reducing environmental impact, improving health and well-being, and enhancing livelihoods. Unilever focuses on sustainable sourcing of raw materials, reducing waste, and promoting social responsibility.
- **Patagonia:** Patagonia, a well-known outdoor clothing and gear company, is dedicated to environmental and social responsibility. The company emphasises fair labour practices, uses recycled materials in its products, and donates a percentage of its profits to environmental causes. Patagonia is also involved in environmental activism and encourages customers to buy fewer products and repair items to reduce overall consumption.
- **Tesla:** Tesla, an electric vehicle and clean energy company, is at the forefront of sustainable transportation. By promoting electric cars and renewable energy solutions, Tesla aims to reduce reliance on fossil fuels and mitigate climate change. The company's mission is to accelerate the world's transition to sustainable energy.
- **Interface:** Interface, a global modular flooring company, has been a leader in sustainability. The company has set ambitious goals to achieve "Mission Zero" – zero environmental impact by 2020. Interface focuses on sustainable manufacturing processes, uses recycled materials, and has a commitment to carbon neutrality.
- **Google (Alphabet Inc.):** Google, through its parent company, Alphabet Inc., has made substantial commitments to sustainability. Google aims to operate its data centres and offices using 100% renewable energy. The company also invests in clean energy projects and has a goal to be carbon-neutral across its entire supply chain.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1. When was the concept of sustainable development officially coined, and by which report?
 - a. 1990, Kyoto Protocol
 - b. 1987, Brundtland Report
 - c. 2000, Millennium Development Goals
 - d. 2015, Paris Agreement
2. What collaborative endeavour involving 195 nations aims to positively transform the world by 2030?
 - a. Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) 2030 Agenda
 - b. Kyoto protocol
 - c. Paris agreement
 - d. Millennium development goals

12.3 CONCEPT OF CORPORATE SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY (CSR)

NOTES

Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) encompasses a wide-ranging business principle, typically reflecting a company's dedication to conducting its operations with ethical considerations. This involves overseeing business processes in a manner that acknowledges their social, economic, and environmental consequences, with due consideration for human rights.

It goes beyond the traditional focus on maximising profits for shareholders and emphasises the broader impact that businesses have on society. The core idea behind CSR is that companies should not only be accountable for their financial performance but also for their contributions to the well-being of communities, the environment, and other stakeholders.

By embracing CSR, companies aim to balance financial success with social and environmental considerations. CSR is not only viewed as a moral and ethical responsibility but also as a strategic approach that can positively impact a company's reputation, brand image, and long-term sustainability. Many organisations integrate CSR principles into their core business strategies to create shared value for both the company and society at large.

12.3.1 | CARROLL'S CSR PYRAMID

Carroll's CSR pyramid, proposed by Archie B. Carroll in 1979, is a widely recognised framework that outlines the four dimensions of CSR. The pyramid is structured hierarchically, with each level representing a different aspect of a company's responsibility to society. Figure 1 displays four components of Carroll's CSR pyramid:

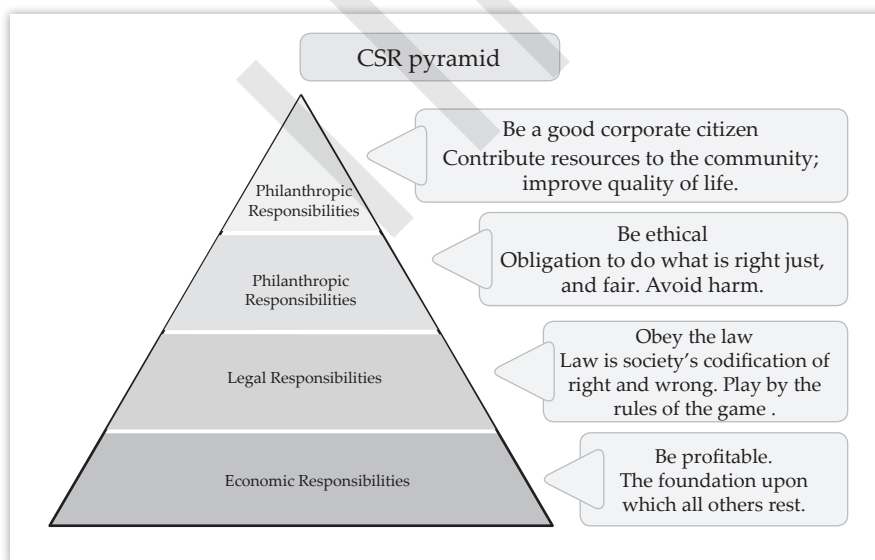


FIGURE 1: Components of Carroll's CSR Pyramid

The components of the pyramid are as follows:

- **Economic responsibilities:** At the base of the pyramid, economic responsibilities refer to a company's primary obligation to be profitable and contribute to economic

NOTES

development. This involves producing goods and services, generating jobs, and ensuring a fair return to investors. Without economic viability, a company may struggle to fulfil its other social responsibilities.

- **Legal responsibilities:** The second layer involves compliance with laws and regulations. Companies are expected to operate within the legal framework of the jurisdictions in which they operate. Adhering to laws ensures that businesses contribute positively to societal order and stability.
- **Ethical responsibilities:** The middle layer emphasises ethical conduct beyond legal obligations. This involves behaviour that is fair, just, and conforms to societal norms and expectations. Ethical responsibilities go beyond the law and involve considering the impact of business decisions on various stakeholders, including employees, customers, and the wider community.
- **Philanthropic responsibilities:** At the top of the pyramid, philanthropic responsibilities involve voluntary actions that contribute to the well-being of society. This includes charitable donations, community development initiatives, and other activities aimed at improving the quality of life for people in the broader community. While not obligatory, philanthropy is seen as a way for companies to give back and make a positive social impact.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

3. According to Carroll's CSR pyramid, what is the primary obligation at the base of the pyramid?
 - a. Legal responsibilities
 - b. Ethical responsibilities
 - c. Economic responsibilities
 - d. Philanthropic responsibilities
4. Philanthropic responsibilities, at the top of Carroll's CSR pyramid, involve _____ actions that contribute to the well-being of society.

12.4 USING CSR TO GAIN COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE

It is essential for companies to integrate CSR into their overall business strategy authentically rather than treating it as a mere marketing tool. A genuine commitment to social responsibility is more likely to result in sustainable competitive advantages. Implementing CSR can indeed be used strategically to gain a competitive advantage.

Following are the ways in which companies can leverage CSR for a competitive edge:

- **Enhanced reputation and brand image:** Companies that engage in socially responsible practices often build a positive reputation. Consumers are more likely to support and prefer businesses that demonstrate a commitment to ethical and sustainable practices.

- **Customer loyalty:** CSR activities can create a sense of loyalty among customers. When consumers perceive a company as socially responsible, they are more likely to remain loyal and choose its products or services over competitors.
- **Attracting and retaining talent:** Employees are increasingly considering a company's social responsibility when choosing where to work. A commitment to CSR can help attract top talent and improve employee retention.
- **Cost savings and efficiency:** Implementing sustainable and environmentally friendly practices can lead to cost savings in the long run. For example, energy-efficient technologies not only reduce a company's carbon footprint but can also lower operational costs.
- **Access to capital:** Investors, including socially responsible investment (SRI) funds, are increasingly considering a company's CSR practices when making investment decisions. Companies with strong CSR initiatives may find it easier to attract investment.
- **Competitive differentiation:** CSR can serve as a unique selling proposition, setting a company apart from its competitors. If a company is known for its ethical practices or social contributions, it can differentiate itself in a crowded market.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5. What is one potential benefit of implementing CSR, as mentioned in the passage?
 - a. Increased marketing effectiveness
 - b. Short-term cost reduction
 - c. Enhanced reputation and brand image
 - d. Exclusively attracting socially responsible investors
6. How can CSR contribute to competitive differentiation?
 - a. By focusing solely on marketing strategies
 - b. Through cost savings and efficiency
 - c. Exclusively targeting a specific customer segment
 - d. By creating a positive reputation

12.5 STAKEHOLDERS AND SHAREHOLDERS

Stakeholders are individuals, groups, or entities that have an interest or concern in the activities, outcomes, or success of a project, organisation, or system. They can influence or be influenced by the actions and decisions made in the context of the project or entity. Identifying and understanding stakeholders is a crucial aspect of effective project management, business operations, and governance. It is important to understand and manage the interests, concerns, and expectations of stakeholders for the success of a project or business. Effective stakeholder management involves

communication, engagement, and addressing their needs to ensure that the decisions and actions taken are aligned with their expectations.

Table 1 shows the key differences between equity shareholders and preference shareholders:

TABLE 1: Differences Between Equity Shareholders and Preference Shareholders

Feature	Equity Shareholders	Preference Shareholders
Meaning	An equity shareholder, also known as a common shareholder or ordinary shareholder, is an individual, institution, or entity that owns equity shares or common stock in a company.	Preference shareholders are individuals or entities that hold preference shares in a company. Preference shares are a class of shares that come with certain preferential rights and privileges compared to ordinary or equity shares.
Nature of ownership	Owners with residual rights; highest risk, potential for higher returns	Owners with preference in dividends and liquidation; lower risk, fixed returns
Dividend payment	Variable, based on company profitability, discretionary	Fixed rate, predetermined, paid before equity shareholders
Risk and return	Higher risk, potential for higher returns	Lower risk, limited to a fixed rate, no capital appreciation
Voting rights	Yes, voting rights in major decisions and AGMs	Limited or no voting rights, if present, on specific matters
Capital repayment	Repaid last in case of liquidation, after all obligations	Repaid before equity shareholders in the case of liquidation

Let's discuss the shareholder as a stakeholder.

Shareholders are a significant category of stakeholders in a company. As owners of a portion of the company's equity (shares or stocks), they have a direct financial interest in the company's performance and profitability. Shareholders are considered important stakeholders, and their interests often align with the financial success and growth of the company.

Shareholders invest capital in the company, anticipating returns through dividends or stock appreciation. They influence decision-making through voting rights on crucial matters, aligning with their shareholdings. Bearing financial risks from the company's success, shareholders are directly impacted by its financial health, strategic choices, and market performance. Companies must maintain communication transparency, providing shareholders with critical information such as financial reports. Shareholders possess legal rights, requiring the company to act in their best interests while safeguarding ownership rights. Effective communication and engagement are pivotal in corporate governance, where companies seek a balance between shareholder interests and those of other stakeholders for sustainable and responsible practices.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS**NOTES**

7. Equity shareholders have voting rights in major decisions and Annual General Meetings (AGMs), whereas preference shareholders have limited or no voting rights. (True/False)
8. A shareholder is an individual, institution, or entity that owns _____ in a company.

12.6 DRIVING FORCE FOR CSR IN INDIA

A combination of regulatory requirements, societal expectations, global standards, and a recognition of the long-term benefits of CSR have positioned it as a driving force for businesses in India. Companies are increasingly integrating CSR into their core business strategies, contributing to both societal well-being and sustainable development. Several factors act as driving forces for CSR in India.

Figure 2 displays the drivers of CSR in India:



FIGURE 2: Drivers of CSR in India

Let us discuss these drivers of CSR in detail:

- **Legal mandates:** The introduction of Section 135 of the Companies Act, 2013, made it mandatory for certain qualifying companies to spend a percentage of their profits on CSR activities. This legal requirement has been a significant driver, ensuring that businesses integrate social responsibility into their operations.
- **Government initiatives:** The Indian government has been actively promoting CSR through various initiatives. The National Voluntary Guidelines (NVGs) on social, environmental, and economic responsibilities of business provide a framework for businesses to align their activities with societal needs.

NOTES

- **Public awareness and activism:** Increased awareness among the Indian public about social and environmental issues, coupled with the rise of social activism, has led to higher expectations from businesses. Consumers and stakeholders are increasingly demanding that companies contribute positively to society.
- **Global standards and expectations:** As Indian businesses expand globally, they face scrutiny from international stakeholders who adhere to global CSR standards. Adapting to these expectations has become crucial for maintaining a positive global reputation.
- **Ethical business practices:** Many Indian companies recognise the importance of ethical business practices in building trust with customers and stakeholders. CSR is viewed as a means to demonstrate commitment to ethical conduct, contributing to long-term sustainability.
- **Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs):** The alignment of CSR initiatives with the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) provides a global framework for businesses in India to address critical social and environmental challenges.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

9. What legal provision in India made it mandatory for certain qualifying companies to allocate a percentage of their profits to CSR activities?
 - a. Section 136 of the Companies Act
 - b. Section 120 of the Income Tax Act
 - c. Section 135 of the Companies Act, 2013
 - d. Section 50 of the Banking Regulation Act
10. Why do Indian companies adapt to global CSR standards?
 - a. To maintain a positive global reputation
 - b. To align with the Companies Act, 2013
 - c. To increase profits
 - d. To fulfil legal mandates

12.7 OBSTACLES IN IMPLEMENTATION OF CSR

Obstacles in implementation of CSR refers to the challenges or hindrances that organisations may encounter when trying to incorporate and execute CSR initiatives within their business operations. The goal of CSR is to have a positive impact on society while also contributing to the company's long-term success.

The term "obstacles" in this context implies that there are various difficulties, barriers, or impediments that can impede or complicate the process of adopting and effectively carrying out CSR practices. These obstacles can come from both internal and external factors and may involve financial, operational, cultural, or strategic challenges that organisations must navigate to successfully integrate CSR into their business models.

Figure 3 displays the obstacles to the implementation of CSR:

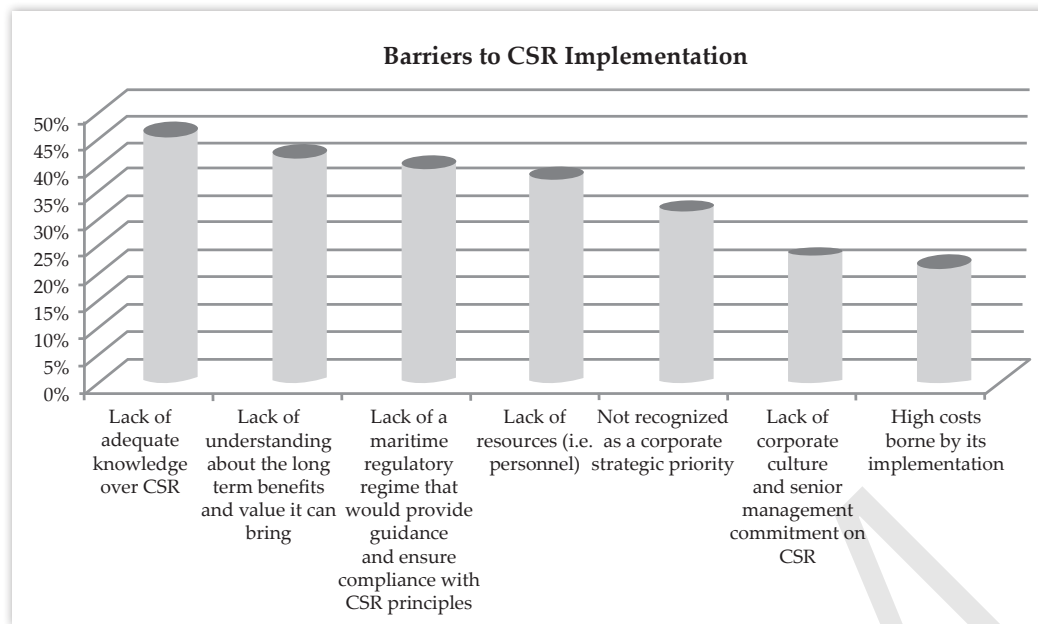


FIGURE 3: Obstacles in implementation of CSR

Source: https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Barriers-to-CSR-implementation_fig1_330004992

1. **Lack of adequate knowledge over CSR:** This barrier can lead to companies not understanding the importance of CSR and the benefits it can bring to their business, such as improved reputation, increased customer loyalty, and reduced costs.
2. **Lack of understanding about long term benefits and value it can bring:** Many organisations fail to comprehend the lasting advantages of CSR, hindering its implementation as they underestimate the positive impact on reputation, brand, and sustainability.
3. **Lack of resources:** CSR can require significant resources, both financial and human, to implement effectively. This can be a barrier for smaller companies or those with limited budgets.
4. **Not recognised as a corporate strategic priority:** If CSR is not seen as a strategic priority for the company, it is unlikely to be given the resources and attention it needs to be successful. This can be due to a lack of understanding of the benefits of CSR or a focus on other priorities, such as financial performance or market share.
5. **Lack of corporate culture senior management commitment on CSR:** Absence of a CSR-oriented culture and insufficient commitment from senior management create barriers, as they undermine the integration of responsible business practices into core organisational strategies.
6. **High costs borne by its implementation:** CSR can be expensive to implement, especially for companies that are starting from scratch. The costs can include things like hiring new staff, training employees, and investing in new technologies.

How to overcome the Obstacles to CSR Implementation

There are a number of things that companies can do to overcome the obstacle to CSR implementation. These include:

- Educating senior management and employees about the long-term benefits of CSR
- Allocating adequate resources to CSR initiatives
- Developing clear CSR goals and objectives
- Measuring and reporting on the progress of CSR initiatives
- Engaging with stakeholders in the development and implementation of CSR initiatives
- Ensuring that CSR initiatives are aligned with the company's culture and values

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

11. What is a potential consequence of CSR not being recognised as a corporate strategic priority?
 - a. Increased customer loyalty
 - b. Enhanced financial performance
 - c. Insufficient resources allocation
 - d. Reduced market share
12. What is a significant challenge for smaller companies or those with limited budgets regarding CSR implementation?
 - a. Lack of corporate culture
 - b. High costs
 - c. Insufficient commitment
 - d. Lack of understanding

12.8 CORPORATE SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Let us discuss the difference between Corporate Social Responsibility and Corporate Governance: Table 2 shows the difference between corporate social responsibility and corporate governance:

TABLE 2: Difference Between Corporate Social Responsibility and Corporate Governance

Aspects	Corporate Social Responsibility	Corporate Governance
Meaning	CSR involves the integration of social and environmental concerns into business operations and interactions with stakeholders.	Corporate governance focuses on the system of rules, practices, and processes by which a company is directed and controlled.
Purpose	Aims to contribute positively to society and the environment beyond legal or regulatory obligations.	Primarily concerned with enhancing the overall management and accountability of the company to protect the interests of stakeholders.

Aspects	Corporate Social Responsibility	Corporate Governance
Focus area	Concerned with ethical, social, and environmental impact.	Primarily concerned with the structure, functioning, and decision-making processes within the organisation.
Key stakeholders	Includes a broad range of stakeholders, including employees, customers, communities, and the environment.	Focuses on shareholders, board members, executives, and other internal parties involved in decision-making.
Scope of responsibility	Extends beyond legal requirements and encompasses voluntary initiatives for societal and environmental well-being.	Encompasses adherence to laws, regulations, and ethical standards, ensuring fairness, transparency, and accountability.
Voluntariness	Often involves voluntary actions that go beyond legal obligations.	Encompasses both legal obligations and voluntary best practices to ensure responsible business conduct.
Measurement and reporting	Metrics may include social and environmental impact, community engagement, and ethical business practices.	Focuses on financial reporting, risk management, and governance structures, often reflected in annual reports and disclosures.
Long-Term vs. Short-Term	Emphasises long-term sustainability and positive societal impact.	Addresses both short-term performance and long-term sustainability, ensuring the company's continued success.
Examples	Philanthropy, sustainable sourcing, and employee volunteer programmes.	Board structures, transparency, ethical decision-making, and financial accountability.

SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

13. Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) often involves voluntary actions that go beyond _____ obligations.
14. Which of the following best describes the purpose of Corporate Governance?
 - a. Enhancing social and environmental impact
 - b. Ensuring transparency and accountability in company management
 - c. Voluntary initiatives for societal well-being
 - d. Adhering to ethical standards beyond legal requirements

12.9 SUMMARY

- Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) encompasses a wide-ranging business principle, typically reflecting a company's dedication to conducting its operations with ethical considerations.
- Carroll's CSR pyramid, proposed by Archie B. Carroll in 1979, is a widely recognised framework that outlines the four dimensions of CSR.

NOTES

- Employees are increasingly considering a company's social responsibility when choosing where to work. A commitment to CSR can help attract top talent and improve employee retention.
- A shareholder is an individual, institution, or entity that owns shares or stocks in a company. When you own shares in a company, you become a partial owner of that company and are considered a shareholder.
- A shareholder is a crucial stakeholder in a company, representing an individual or entity that owns a portion of the company's equity through the possession of shares.
- The introduction of Section 135 of the Companies Act, 2013, made it mandatory for certain qualifying companies to spend a percentage of their profits on CSR activities.
- The alignment of CSR initiatives with the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) provides a global framework for businesses in India to address critical social and environmental challenges.
- The absence of a CSR-oriented culture and insufficient commitment from senior management create barriers, as they undermine the integration of responsible business practices into core organisational strategies.
- Corporate governance focuses on the system of rules, practices, and processes by which a company is directed and controlled. Primarily concerned with enhancing the overall management and accountability of the company to protect the interests of stakeholders.

12.10 KEY WORDS

- **Sustainable development:** It refers to balancing economic, social, and environmental factors to meet present needs without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.
- **Corporate governance:** It is the system of rules, practices, and processes by which a company is directed and controlled, ensuring accountability, fairness, and transparency in decision-making.
- **Stakeholders:** These are the individuals, groups, or organisations that have an interest or concern in the actions and outcomes of a business, influencing or being influenced by its activities.
- **Shares:** It refers to the units of ownership in a company, representing a claim on its assets and earnings, typically bought and sold in financial markets.

12.11 CASE STUDY: TATA CONSULTANCY SERVICES LIMITED

Tata Consultancy Services Limited (TCS), a member of the Tata Group and a prominent IT services, consulting, and business solutions company, has played a pivotal role in guiding major global corporations through transformative journeys for over five decades. In the fiscal year 2021-22, TCS exceeded the mandated Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) expenditure, allocating a total of ₹ 727 crores, with ₹ 716 crores specifically directed towards CSR initiatives.

The company upholds the belief that everyone possesses equal potential but may not have equal opportunities. TCS is committed to empowering individuals and communities by promoting self-reliance through purpose and technology. The company is steadfast in upholding values like fairness, equity, and respect for human rights. TCS is resolute in its dedication to connecting people to opportunities in the digital economy and creating inclusive pathways for everyone, with a particular focus on women, youth, and marginalised groups.

Through a range of CSR initiatives and global programmes, TCS continues to invest in addressing the most critical needs of communities, with a primary focus on education, skill development, employment, and entrepreneurship. During the fiscal year 2022, TCS projects that its global community initiatives have had a positive impact on more than 1.7 million beneficiaries. This substantial influence is attributed to the committed endeavours of over 58,900 employees who generously volunteered over 700,000 hours to aid local community projects.

Source: <https://thecsrjournal.in/top-companies-india-csr-sustainability-2022/>

QUESTIONS

1. What are the issues addressed by Tata Consultancy Services Limited through CSR?

(Hint: TCS continues to invest in addressing the most critical needs of communities, with a primary focus on education, skill development, employment, and entrepreneurship.)

2. According to TCS estimations, how many beneficiaries were positively impacted by its CSR initiative in fiscal year 2022?

(Hint: TCS estimates that its global community initiatives have positively impacted over 1.7 million beneficiaries.)

12.12 EXERCISE

1. What do you mean by sustainable development?
2. What are the major drivers that influence corporate social responsibility?
3. What is the difference between equity shareholders and preference shareholders?
4. Discuss in brief the concept of corporate governance.

12.13 ANSWERS FOR SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Concept of Sustainable Development	1.	b. 1987, Brundtland Report
	2.	a. Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) 2030 Agenda
Concept of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR)	3.	c. Economic responsibilities
	4.	voluntary

NOTES

Topic	Q. No.	Answer
Using CSR to Gain Competitive Advantage	5.	c. Enhanced reputation and brand image
	6.	d. By creating a positive reputation
Stakeholders and Shareholders	7.	True
	8.	shares
Driving Force for CSR in India	9.	c. Section 135 of the Companies Act, 2013
	10.	a. To maintain a positive global reputation
Obstacles in Implementation of CSR	11.	c. Insufficient resources allocation
	12.	b. High costs
Corporate Social Responsibility and Corporate Governance	13.	legal
	14.	b. Ensuring transparency and accountability in company management

12.14 SUGGESTED BOOKS AND E-REFERENCES

SUGGESTED BOOKS

- Andreas Rasche, Mette Morsing, Jeremy Moon · 2017. Corporate Social Responsibility
- Jeffrey Sachs, 2015. The Age of Sustainable Development

E-REFERENCES

- <https://carocked.wordpress.com/2015/02/28/corporate-social-responsibility/>
- <https://www.sd-commission.org.uk/pages/what-is-sustainable-development.html>